ALADWAA

Gem

مذاكرتك ديجيتال

نسخة تجريبية للمدرسين

هدية مجانية

New

Hello!



منهج جديد

New curriculum

2022

3rd Prep

First Term

Contents

Module 1 Where I live

Unit 1: Around town 12

Practice (1) 74

Unit 2: Let's go shopping 78

Practice (2) 134

Unit 3: My community 138

Practice (3) 193

Review A 197

Practice (A) 203

Module 2 Young people

Unit 4: Have you ever travelled by plane? 206

Practice (4) 268

Unit 5: Young role models 272

Practice (5) 328

Unit 6: What's wrong? 332

Practice (6) 396

Review B 400

Practice (B) 405

Video Scripts 411

Listening Texts 415



Check your English

1 Complete the questions with these words:

a lot of – how to – if – located – mustn't – quietly – used to – which

1. What mustn't you do in an exam?
2. What should you do ..... you feel ill at school?
3. What do you call someone who knows ..... paint very well?
4. Which city is ..... on the Suez Canal?
5. Who ..... think that an animal's eye helped blind people?
6. What fast food has ..... fat in it?
7. What do you call the material ..... people often use to make clothes?
8. In which building do people usually sit and read .....?

2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers:

a) [ ] cotton

b) [ ] the Ancient Egyptians

c) [1] talk loudly

d) [ ] Port Said

e) [ ] a library

f) [ ] pizza

g) [ ] You should tell the teacher.

h) [ ] an artist

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes:

1. As we walk into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.
   As we were walking into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.
2. My sister bought a cotton, new, pretty dress.
   .....
3. Tarek wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown one.
   .....
4. Look at those dark clouds! I think it is raining soon.
   .....
5. Hundreds of fish caught by the fishermen every week.
   .....

5 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 The boy is ..... .
a) describing a photo
b) selling clothes
c) going to the shops
d) buying something

2 The man is ..... .
a) buying tickets at a museum
b) helping a woman
c) asking for information on the phone
d) describing a visit to a museum yesterday

3 The woman is ..... .
a) making a salad
b) eating lunch
c) saying how to make a salad
d) saying how to make an omelette

4 Sara is ..... .
a) cooking food for Leila
b) inviting Leila to her house
c) making a film
d) going to Leila's house this evening

5 The woman in the shop ..... .
a) buys a red dress
b) wants a larger dress
c) doesn't buy a dress
d) buys a blue dress

6 Read the text, then answer the questions:



What clothes do you like to wear? Most people can choose the clothes that they wear each day, but in some jobs you must wear special clothes. For example, firefighters must wear clothes that are made of special material that does not burn. If you are a doctor, you should sometimes wear special clothes and masks that stop you from becoming ill. Many other people, such as engineers and builders, must wear hats and big boots when they are working.

1 What is different about the clothes firefighters wear?

They are made of a special material that does not burn.

2 How do the clothes that doctors wear help them?

.....

3 What do engineers and builders often wear?

.....

4 Why do you think they wear these clothes?

.....

5 In which other jobs do people wear special clothes, and why?

.....

7 Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.

- What makes this job special?
- Why do you think the person does this job?
- Say if you would like to do this job and why.



Unit 1 Around town

Objectives of the unit

Reading : A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport; a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend

Writing : A fact file; a paragraph about your city; a reply to an email

Listening : Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out

Speaking : Giving directions; talking about your city or village; discussing timetables and public transport; making suggestions

Language : The present simple for scheduled events

Life Skills : Decision making; respect for diversity

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

Warm Up

At which place can you find the following in your town?



1 .....



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....



6 .....

- Now complete the following:

My town

I love my town. There are many beautiful places to go and a lot to do. I can keep my money in the ..... . I can see ancient monuments in the ..... . The ..... next to our school has nice clothes. I usually go to the ..... to do sports with my friends. On Fridays, I take the train to Tanta from the ..... to visit my grandparents. When I visit them, they invite me to have dinner at a nice ..... .

Lessons 1 & 2

SB Pages 2 - 5
WB Pages 72 & 73

(A) Vocabulary

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n)	noun
(v)	verb
(adj)	adjective
(adv)	adverb
(prep)	preposition
(conj)	conjunction
(pro)	pronoun

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

between ... and ...	بين (اثنين)	on the corner	على الناصية/الركن
from ... to ...	من ... إلى ...	on the right/left	على اليمين/اليسار
next to	بجوار	opposite	في مقابل/مواجهة

Places الأماكن

aquarium (n)	معرض الأحياء المائية	library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة)
bank (n)	بنك	market (n)	سوق
botanical gardens (n)	حدائق نباتية	museum (n)	متحف
café (n)	مقهى/كافيه	restaurant (n)	مطعم
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي	shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق
hospital (n)	مستشفى	station (n)	محطة

Verbs to give directions أفعال لإعطاء الاتجاهات

go straight on	اذهب مباشرة	turn right	انعطف يمينًا
take the first/ second road	خذ الطريق الأول/الثاني	walk/go past	اذهب/امشِ مارًا بـ
turn left	انعطف يسارًا		

Lesson 2

attractive (adj)	جذاب	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
building (n)	مبنى	peaceful (adj)	هادئ/آمن
calm = quiet (adj)	هادئ	pollution (n)	تلوث
especially (adv)	خاصة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
event (n)	حدث	ruins (n)	بقايا/حطام
historical (adj)	تاريخي	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
monuments (n)	آثار	usual (adj)	معتاد

Nouns and Adjectives الأسماء والصفات

Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة		Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة	
care	رعاية	careful	حريص/حذر	help	مساعدة	helpful	مساعد/متعاون
peace	السلام	peaceful	هادئ/آمن	use	استخدام	useful	مفيد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

beautiful (adj)	جميل
complete (d) (v)	يكمل
How far ...?	كم المسافة/كم البعد
Ismailia (n)	مدينة الإسماعيلية
metre (n)	متر
order (ed) (n/v)	ترتيب/يرتب
plant (n)	نبات
train station (n)	محطة قطار
use (d) (v)	يستخدم
volleyball (n)	الكرة الطائرة

Lesson 2

area (n)	منطقة
beach (n)	شاطئ
boat (n)	قارب/مركب
bold (adj)	بالخط العريض
carry (y ied) (v)	يحمل
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من/يفحص
chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج
city (n)	مدينة كبيرة
cousin (n)	ابن/ابنة (العم/الخال/العمة/الخالة)
daughter (n)	ابنة
describe (d) (v)	يصف
dictionary (n)	قاموس
fact file (n)	ملف الحقائق
famous (adj)	مشهور
favourite (adj)	مفضل
grandparents (n)	الأجداد
handball (n)	كرة اليد
include (d) (v)	يشمل/يتضمن
Lake Timsah (n)	بحيرة التمساح
land (n/v)	أرض/يهبط
look (ed) like (v)	يشبه
lorry (y ies) (n)	شاحنة
lots of = a lot of	كثير من
machine (n)	آلة
meaning (n)	معنى
motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
notebook (n)	كراسة
only (adv)	فقط
perhaps (adv)	ربما
person (n)	شخص

Port Said (n)	مدينة بورسعيد	the same (adj)	نفس
something (pro)	شيء ما	the Sphinx (n)	أبو الهول
squash (n)	لعبة الإسكواش	the Suez Canal (n)	قناة السويس
Suez (n)	مدينة السويس	together (adv)	معًا/سويًا
the Natural Science Museum (n)	متحف العلوم الطبيعية	village (n)	قرية
		work (ed) (n/v)	العمل/يعمل

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

give ▶	directions	يعطى الاتجاهات	take ▶	turns	يتبادل الأدوار

Lesson 2

do ▶	a job	يؤدى وظيفة/مهمة	have ▶	English	يأخذ حصة لغة إنجليزية
	homework	يؤدى الواجب المدرسى		tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس تنس
	things	يفعل أشياء	lots of things to do		الكثير من الأشياء لفعلها
go ▶	shopping	يذهب للتسوق	play ▶	sports/games	يلعب رياضة/ألعاب
	swimming	يذهب للسباحة	one and a half million people		مليون ونصف نسمة

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

around town	حول المدينة	in pairs	فى ثنائيات
at the sports centre	فى المركز الرياضى	on page ...	فى صفحة ...
find out	يكتشف	on the map	على الخريطة
for about	لحوالى/لمدة	want to + inf.	يريد أن

Lesson 2

at the aquarium	فى معرض الأحياء المائية	on the lake	فى البحيرة
compare with	يقارن بـ	on the road	فى الطريق
interested in	مهتم بـ	read about	يقرأ عن
late for	متأخر على	run through	يجرى عبر
live in + مكان	يعيش فى	spend time with	يقضى وقتا مع
near	بالقرب من	talk about	يتكلم عن

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

borrow	يستعير	lend	يُسلف	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل

Lesson 2

attractive	جذاب	unattractive	غير جذاب	beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
busy	مزدحم/مشغول	free	حر/فاضٍ	good at	جيد فى	bad at	سيئ فى
important	هام/مهم	unimportant	غير هام	large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير
old	قديم	modern	حديث/عصرى	remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
true	صح	false	خطأ	near	قريب	far	بعيد

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 1

Present		Past simple	Past participle
find	يجد	found	found
give	يعطى	gave	given
read	يقرأ	read	read
see	يرى	saw	seen
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Lesson 2

build	يبنى	built	built
get up	ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up
put	يضع	put	put
sing	يغنى	sang	sung
win	يفوز	won	won

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 2

especially (adv)	خاصةً	more than usual
lake (n)	بحيرة	a large area of water with land around it
monument (n)	أثر	something that people build to remember an important person or event
peaceful (adj)	هادئ	calm and quiet
traffic (n)	حركة المرور	cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists find the new museum ..... . Many of them visit it every year.
   a) unattractive
   b) ugly
   c) attractive
   d) tiny
2. You can see beautiful fish at the ..... .
   a) museum
   b) library
   c) aquarium
   d) bank
3. Karim is always late ..... school. He should get up earlier.
   a) for
   b) at
   c) by
   d) to

Answers (١ د) (٢ د) (٣ a)

Language Notes

1 **library** مكتبة (القراءة الكتب فيها أو استعارة الكتب منها)
bookshop مكتبة (البيع وشراء الكتب)

- I **borrowed** two books from the library.
- My father **bought** that book from the nearby bookshop.

2 **What can we do in these places?** ماذا يمكن أن نفعل فى هذه الأماكن؟

Place المكان		What we can do ما يمكننا فعله
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	see beautiful fish
bank	بنك	keep or borrow money
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	see trees and other interesting plants
library	مكتبة للقراءة	borrow and read books
sports centre	مركز رياضى	play volleyball, tennis and other sports

3 **another** + اسم مفرد آخر
other + اسم جمع آخر

- I want another **book** instead of this one.
- Electric buses are better for the environment than other **types** of transport.

4 **reach** + مكان يصل إلى مكان (بدون حرف جر)
get to + مكان يصل إلى مكان
arrive in + قرية/مدينة/دولة يصل إلى مكان كبير
arrive at + مكتب/بيت/مدرسة يصل إلى مكان داخل المدينة

- The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea.
- He arrived in Cairo last month. = He got to Cairo last month.
- She arrived at school on time.

5 **sometimes**
أحيانا (ظرف تكرار ويأتى وسط الجملة قبل الفعل أو يأتى أول الجملة قبل الفاعل)

- I sometimes go swimming in the afternoon.
- Sometimes, I go swimming in the afternoon.

6 **all (of) + فعل جمع + اسم جمع** — **كل**

- All (of) the **buildings** in Nader's city **are** old.

7 **like + (v + ing) / (to + inf.)** — **يحب**

- Judy likes **going** to a famous shop in her city.
- We like **to eat** together.

8 **hear + (v + ing) / (inf.)** — **يسمع**

- You can only hear the birds **singing**.
- She heard the doorbell **ring** and went to answer it.

9 **Superlative** — **صيغة التفضيل العليا**

- The Sphinx at Giza is perhaps **Egypt's** most famous monument.

تحذف the في صيغة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين مجموعة) إذا جاء قبلها ('s) الملكية.

10 **Talking about directions:** — **التحدث عن الاتجاهات:**

in the + (north شمال / south جنوب / east شرق / west غرب) + of ...

- I live in a small village in the south of Egypt.

11 **love/enjoy + (v + ing) / (n)** — **يحب/يستمتع**

- I love **watching** fish/**fish**.
- I enjoy **playing** chess/**chess**.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father always ..... his office on time.
   a) goes b) arrives c) gets d) reaches
2. Would you like ..... cup of coffee?
   a) all b) other c) others d) another
3. I like ..... more than watching TV.
   a) reading b) to reading c) reads d) read

Answers (١ d) (٢ d) (٣ a)

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- How far is your school from your house?

1. *Dalia wants to go to the library. Listen and order the phrases her friend Mona uses to give her directions from the station.* SB page 3





(1) محطة
(2) اذهب مباشرة
(3) كم تبعد؟
(4) اتجه يسارًا
(5) امشِ مارًّا بـ
(6) الحدائق النباتية
(7) على الناصية
(8) بين
(9) مقابل

Mona : Hello, Dalia. I'm at the library. Where are you?

Dalia : Hi, Mona. I'm next to the station(1). How do I get to the library?

Mona : It's easy. From the station, go straight on(2).

Dalia : How far?(3)

Mona : For about 20 metres.

Dalia : OK. Do I go past the sports centre?

Mona : Yes, but then turn left(4).

Dalia : OK.

Mona : Walk past(5) the botanical gardens(6).

Dalia : I'm walking past them now.

Mona : Great! After the botanical gardens, turn right ...

Dalia : Turn right after the botanical gardens ... OK.

Mona : Then take the second road on the right. Can you see a restaurant?

Dalia : I think I can see it. It's on the corner(7).

Mona : Walk past the restaurant. The library is between(8) the restaurant and the museum, opposite(9) the bank.

Dalia : Thanks, Mona. See you soon!

Post-listening question:

- Where is the library?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What do you like about your city?

1. Read about Ismailia and put the photos in the correct order. SB page 4

I am Sherif and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches[1] the sea.

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive[2] buildings, interesting monuments[3] and lots of gardens. Around 350,000 people live here, but since traffic[4] is slow, there isn't much pollution[5].

Ismailia is peaceful[6], but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do here, especially[7] at the weekends. On Friday afternoons, I often go to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it.

On Saturday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports centre[8] at 9 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friend, Sayed.

There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum[9] because I'm interested in animals. It's a good place to go at the weekend.

(1) يصل إلى
(2) جذاب
(3) أثار
(4) حركة المرور
(5) التلوث
(6) هادئ/آمن
(7) خاصة
(8) مركز رياضي
(9) متحف العلوم الطبيعية

a 

b 

c 

d 

e 

Post-reading question:

Complete: 1. Ismailia is located between ..... .

2. Around ..... people live in Ismailia.

Lesson 2

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Describe your city.

6. *Listen to Nader and Judy talking about where they live. Are these sentences T (true) or F (false)? Correct the false sentences.* SB page 5



Nader: My name's Nader. I live in Alexandria with my mum, my dad and my two brothers. Alexandria is a very historical[1] city, with lots of famous buildings, ruins[2] and monuments[3], but it's a modern city too, and there are lots of things to do here. At the weekend, I like to spend time with my family. On Friday afternoons, we usually go to the park, but sometimes we go to a museum[4] or to the aquarium[5]. I love watching the fish! On Saturdays, I visit my grandparents. They live in Alexandria, too. I enjoy playing chess[6] with my grandad. He's very good at it, but sometimes I win!

(1) تاريخي
(2) بقايا/حطام
(3) أثر
(4) متحف
(5) معرض الأحياء المائية
(6) شطرنج
(7) محمية طبيعية
(8) مركز رياضي



Judy: My name's Judy and I live in Aswan. It's a busy city, with about one and a half million people, and there's always a lot to do at the weekend.
On Friday mornings, I sometimes go shopping. Aswan is a great place for this! There are lots of interesting shops and I love going to the famous market. I also like to go to the botanical gardens or the nature reserve[7].
On Saturdays, I do my homework and in the afternoon, I go to the sports centre[8] for my squash lesson. It's my favourite sport.

Post-listening question: - What do Nader's family do on Fridays?

Lesson 2

Language

4. *Choose the correct prepositions.* WB page 73

I live **in** a small village in the south of Egypt. **At** the weekend, I usually do the same things. **On** Saturdays, I get up **at** 7 am, then I always do my homework after breakfast. **At** lunchtime, I visit my cousins. We like to eat together. Then, **in** the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. What do you do?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The ..... is open every day. We can read or borrow books at any time.
a) museum b) library c) station d) bookshop

2 I have an afternoon training for football at the ..... .
a) house b) opera c) sports centre d) theatre

3 You can borrow some money from the ..... . WB
a) bank b) museum c) sports centre d) station

4 Go straight ..... until you come to a large white building.
a) on b) at c) for d) in

5 ..... the second road on the left. The bank is on the right, opposite the aquarium. WB
a) Climb b) Walk c) Go d) Take

6 There are ..... buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. SB
a) terrible b) horrible c) attractive d) ugly

7 We had a ..... afternoon without the children. We were relaxed.
a) noisy b) helpful c) bad d) peaceful

8 My uncle is very good at sports, and he is ..... good at handball. WB
a) special b) especially c) private d) real

9 Thank you for your advice; it's very ..... .
a) helpful b) careful c) busy d) proud

10 I'll meet you at the train ..... .
a) centre b) station c) pavement d) square

11 I asked a man to ..... me the directions to the bank.
a) make b) do c) take d) give

12 She is always interested ..... space science.
a) for b) at c) in d) to

13 Tourists visit Egypt every year to watch the ..... buildings.
a) history b) historian c) historical d) high

14 The Nile ..... through many countries including Egypt.
a) walks b) sails c) runs d) dives

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Hurry up or you'll be late ..... your school.
a) for b) to c) in d) on

2 I forgot my pen. Could I ..... yours?
a) talk b) give c) lend d) borrow

3 My sister wants to ..... tennis lessons.
a) do b) have c) make d) talk

4 There are many castles, ancient ..... and public gardens to visit.
a) environments b) instruments c) monuments d) moments

5 There was a lot of ..... on the roads this morning, so Mr Ahmed was late for work. WB
a) monument b) traffic c) cars d) peace

6 Please be ..... when you carry those eggs! WB
a) usual b) careless c) careful d) noisy

7 In the ..... gardens, you can see different kinds of plants and trees.
a) plant b) botanical c) grass d) tree

8 The café is ..... the corner of the station.
a) with b) for c) of d) on

9 Can you see all those boats on the .....? WB
a) lake b) monument c) land d) population

10 I go ..... the post office every day.
a) between b) paste c) past d) opposite

11 The hospital is ..... the bank.
a) past b) between c) opposite d) next

12 There isn't a lot of traffic in Ismailia, so there isn't much ..... .
a) peace b) care c) pollution d) buildings

13 The ..... of the ancient building were amazing. We liked them.
a) rains b) runs c) prunes d) ruins

14 We travelled by ..... until we reached the sea.
a) floor b) earth c) ground d) land

(B) Language

1 Giving directions: إعطاء الاتجاهات:

عند وصف مكان لشخص نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر لإعطاء الاتجاهات.

- Turn right/left at the traffic lights.
- Go straight on this road. It's on the corner.
- Walk past the railway station.
- Take the second road on the right.

ويمكن استخدام حروف جر معينة لوصف الاتجاهات:

next to	بجوار	on the right/left	على اليمين/اليسار
between ... and ...	بين (اثنين)	walk/go past	اذهب/امش مارًا بـ
go straight on	اذهب مباشرة	on the corner	على الناصية/الركن
opposite	فى مقابل/مواجهة	from ... to ...	من ... إلى ...

- The bank is next to the shopping centre.
- My house is opposite the railway station.
- The library is at the end of this road on the corner.
- Take the first road on your right.
- From the station, go straight on and then turn left.
- Go past the post office.

لاحظ أن:

كلمة (between) يأتى بعدها شيئين أو شخصين أو مكانين.

- Ali is sitting between **Mona** and **Nader**.
- My school is between the **bank** and the **post office**.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The library is ..... (between) to the Chinese restaurant.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (next) لوجود كلمة to.

2. My house is ..... (opposite) the bank and the library.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (between) لوجود مكانين بينهما and.

2 Prepositions of time

حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمان

- Use prepositions of time (in/at/on): to say when you do things.

استخدم حروف الجر للوقت (in/at/on) لتقول متى تفعل الأشياء.

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمان	Use الاستخدام	Examples
in	- Months الشهور: in January/in April - Seasons فصول السنة: in spring/in winter - Years السنوات: in 1984/in 2015/in the 1990s - Centuries القرون: in the 20th century - Times of day فترات اليوم: in the morning/ in the afternoon/ in the evening - Longer periods of time فترات طويلة من الوقت: in the past/in 3 years/ in the holidays	- I was born in October. - We go to Hurghada in summer. - I was born in 2007. - We are in the 21st century. - I usually do my homework in the evening. - My uncle will travel in three weeks.
on	- Days of the week أيام الأسبوع: on Monday - Days + parts of days أيام + فترات اليوم: on Tuesday afternoon/ on Saturday mornings - Dates التاريخ: on November 22nd - Special days أيام مميزة: on my birthday/ on Christmas Day	- Do you work on Mondays? - I'll travel on Tuesday morning. - Her birthday is on 20th of May. - Where will you be on New Year's Day?

at	- Clock times الساعات: at 7.30 am/at 5 o'clock - Festivals مهرجانات: at Christmas/at Easter - Exact or a particular time وقت محدد: at night/at the weekend/ at noon/at lunchtime/ at midnight	- I have a meeting at 9 am. - People go to parks at Easter. - Jane went home at lunchtime. - It gets cold at night.
no preposition لا يوجد حرف جر	- next week, year, month, etc. - last night, year, etc. - this morning, month, etc. - every day, night, year, etc. - today, tomorrow, yesterday.	- My uncle will arrive next month. - We went to the zoo last week. - He did his homework this morning. - She is travelling tomorrow.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Lucy is arriving ..... (in) February 13th.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (on) لأنها تعبر عن التاريخ.

2. The train leaves tomorrow morning ..... (in) 8.00 am.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (at) لأنها تعبر عن الساعة.

Check Point

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We buy many presents for our mother ..... (in) Mother's Day.
2. From the market, ... (turning) left and go straight on.
3. I go to work ..... (on) nine thirty every day.
4. It's always hot ..... (with) the summer.
5. The museum is ..... (in) the corner, opposite the hospital.

Answers: 1 on 2 turn 3 at 4 in 5 on

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The women's clothes shop is next ..... the jewellery shop.
a) from b) at c) to d) in

2 The theatre is ..... the bookshop.
a) opposite b) next c) between d) at

3 ..... two blocks and turn left.
a) Walks b) To walk c) Walking d) Walk

4 The sports centre is ..... the aquarium and the hospital. WB
a) between b) past c) opposite d) next

5 What do you do ..... Friday evening?
a) at b) on c) in d) from

6 My brother was born ..... January 23rd.
a) in b) on c) at d) for

7 ..... the weekend, I usually do the same things. WB
a) With b) In c) At d) no preposition

8 He walked ..... the beautiful garden where he used to play in his childhood.
a) between b) next c) past d) front

9 I'll see you ..... next week.
a) no preposition b) in c) at d) on

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 It rains a lot ..... (on) winter.
2 Go straight on. Then ..... (taking) the first road on the left.
3 Where did you go ..... (in last summer)?

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 It's the building near the library on the left. (to)

.....

2 The movie starts in ten minutes. It's 08:50 pm. (nine pm)

.....

3 We usually have lunch at one. (in)

.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually get up ..... half past eight.
   a) on b) of c) at d) in
2. The toy shop is ..... the corner of the street.
   a) by b) on c) in d) about
3. The bank is at the end of the road ..... the left.
   a) for b) in c) at d) on
4. I'll be back ..... ten minutes.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for
5. The shopping centre is ..... the town hall and in front of the car park.
   a) opposite b) next c) on d) in
6. The museum is ..... the supermarket and the café.
   a) on b) to c) opposite d) between
7. I get up late ..... Saturdays.
   a) in b) of c) at d) on
8. My father always gives me a special gift ..... Christmas Day.
   a) at b) to c) on d) by
9. Do you want to play tennis ..... noon?
   a) at b) in c) on d) no preposition

2 Find and correct the mistakes:

1. I have a meeting in Thursday morning. (.....)
2. Go straight at and then turn left. (.....)
3. I usually get up on seven. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I always read in the evening.
   ..... (night)
2. The post office is on the left of the cinema.
   ..... (right)
3. On the right of my house, there is a park. On the left, there's a market.
   ..... (between)

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Asking for and giving directions طلب وإعطاء الاتجاهات

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد

Where's the library, please? أين المكتبة، من فضلك؟

Walk/Go past the restaurant, it's on the right.
امشِ مارًا بالمطعم، إنها على اليمين.

How do I go/get from the market to the cinema?
كيف أصل من السوق إلى السينما؟

Take the second road, turn right, it's on the left.
اسلك الطريق الثانى، اتجه يمينًا، إنها على اليسار.

How do I go/get to the station, please?
كيف أصل إلى المحطة من فضلك؟

Go straight on, then turn left. It's on the corner.
اذهب مباشرة (فى خط مستقيم) ثم اتجه يسارًا. إنها على الناصية.

Could you tell me the way to the park?
هل يمكن أن تخبرنى الطريق إلى الحديقة؟

It's on the right, opposite the bank. إنها على اليمين، مقابل البنك.

How far? كم تبعد؟

For about 10 minutes. حوالى ١٠ دقائق.

Type a message

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A man is asking Samy how to get to the bank.

Man : Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the bank, please?
Samy : (1)..... . It's at the end of this street.
Man : At the traffic lights?
Samy : Yes. Then, (2)..... past the railway station.
Man : And at the railway station?
Samy : (3)..... .
Man : OK ... right at the station.
Samy : (4)..... . The bank is on the left.
Man : (5)..... .
Samy : You are welcome.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask a man about the place of the post office.
.....
2. A girl asks you how she can go to the cinema.
.....
3. You meet a boy who doesn't know how to get to the library.
.....
4. You want to know the way to the botanical gardens.
.....
5. You describe the way to the park to an old lady.
.....
6. You're asked about the way to the museum.
.....



Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

You ask a policeman about the nearest supermarket.

You : Excuse me. Is there a supermarket near here?

Policeman : (1)..... near here.

You : (2)..... there?

Policeman : At the traffic lights, take the first (3)..... the left.

You : Is it there?

Policeman : No. (4)..... on. It's on the corner on your right.

You : Is it far?

Policeman : Not really.

You : Thank you.

Policeman : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You want to know the way to the nearest train station.

.....

2 Your sister doesn't know how to go to the bookshop.

.....

3 You want to know where the museum is.

.....

4 It's the first time your friend comes to your house. Describe the way.

.....

5 You want to ask about the directions to the market.

.....

6 A man got lost. You tell him where the police station is.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about your city

كيفية الكتابة عن مدينتك

- I live in ..... . It is located ..... .
- There are many buildings such as ..... .
- It has a famous monument ..... .
- ..... people live in my city.
- You can visit ..... and enjoy your time.
- We can play many sports such as ..... .
- You can also visit ..... near the city.

Writing tips

To write a good paragraph, you should always:

- Choose a title that draws attention.
- Organise your ideas before you begin.
- Make sure you stick to the topic.

لكى تكتب موضوعًا جيدًا، يجب عليك أن تختار عنوانًا يجذب الانتباه، وأن تنظم أفكارك قبل البدء فى الكتابة وتلتزم بموضوع الفقرة.

Example

"My city"

I live in Minya. It is located near the Nile. It's south of Cairo. It's in Middle Egypt. The population is nearly 6 million. It has lots of food like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city is famous for its delicious black honey. The honey is made from sugar. Many people come to buy it. Minya has many ancient monuments and buildings. It has a number of important ancient mosques from several ages, such as the Egyptian Mosque and Al Foley Mosque. It also has a small museum to Akhenaten. If you are in Minya, it is good to visit Tell Al-Amarna to see its monuments. There is Minya Sporting Club. It is really an amazing city.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on: " Your city"

My city

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Scarlet asks David about the way to the Italian restaurant.

Scarlet : Is this the right way to the Italian restaurant?
David : No. You're going the wrong way.
Scarlet : Please tell me (1)..... there.
David : I'll give you the directions. Do not worry.
Scarlet : (2)..... it to the restaurant from here?
David : It's quite far from here. On the way here, did you see a school?
Scarlet : Yes, (3)..... a primary school.
David : (4)..... right after the school. Take the second road. It is on the corner.
Scarlet : (5)..... so much.
David : You're welcome.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your father about the directions to the bank.
.....

2 Your friend asks you about the directions to your house.
.....

3 You ask your neighbour how to reach the train station.
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The park is very ..... in the mornings. You can only hear the birds singing. WB
a) helpful b) careful c) hopeful d) peaceful

2 This ..... of the country is mostly desert.
a) lake b) area c) ground d) planet

3 They painted the children's faces to ..... animals.
a) feel like b) look like c) like d) look

4 I don't want to ..... shopping on my own, shall we go together?
a) go b) do c) make d) run

5 Alexandria is a ..... city. It's about 2300 years old.
a) historical b) new c) tiny d) modern

6 My English friend ..... Egypt three days ago.
a) went b) got c) arrived d) reached

7 ..... is a game for two. I like playing it with my grandfather.
a) Cheese b) Chess c) Football d) Volleyball

8 ..... right at the crossroads.
a) Turn b) Turn to c) To turn d) Turning

9 Go straight ..... until the traffic lights.
a) at b) in c) on d) by

10 ..... the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. WB
a) In b) Of c) At d) On

4 Fill in the gaps:

My name's Basmala. I'm (1)..... holiday. I usually have the same routine (2)..... the weekend. I don't get up early. I usually get up (3)..... ten am. I have breakfast with my family. (4)..... lunchtime, we watch TV together.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I never work at the weekends. (Fridays)
.....

2 I am fifteen years old. (born)
.....

3 The chemist's is near the theatre and opposite the Italian restaurant. (next)
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"What you do on one day in the week" WB

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB Pages 6 - 8
WB Pages 74 & 75

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

chat (n)	دردشة	platform (n)	رصيف محطة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	public transport (n)	مواصلات عامة
engineering works (n)	أعمال هندسية	science (n)	مادة العلوم/علم
exhibition (n)	معرض	space (n)	فضاء
guard (n)	حارس	stop (n/v)	موقف/يتوقف
map (n)	خريطة	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
paintings (n)	لوحات	university (n)	جامعة

Lesson 4

across (prep)	عبر	fun (n/adj)	مرح
airport (n)	مطار	including (prep)	متضمنًا/مشتملاً
busy (adj)	مزدحم/مشغول	passenger (n)	مسافر/راكب
comfortable (adj)	مريح	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
electric (adj)	كهربائى (يدار بالكهرباء)	rails (n)	قضبان حديدية
energy (n)	طاقة	railway (n)	سكة حديد
environment (n)	البيئة	unusual (adj)	غير عادى
floor (n)	طابق/دور	valley (n)	وادى

Types of transport أنواع المواصلات

ferry (y-ies) (n)	عبّارة/معدية	tram (n)	الترام
metro (n)	مترو	train (n)	قطار

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

an hour (n)	ساعة من الزمن
crossword (n)	الكلمات المتقاطعة
How long ...?	كم المدة ...؟
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
information (n)	معلومات
journey (n)	رحلة
lesson (n)	حصة/درس
metro map (n)	خريطة المترو
metro train (n)	قطار المترو
minute (n)	دقيقة
Museum Station (n)	محطة المتحف
objects (n)	أشياء
photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية
poster (n)	ملصق إعلانى
space exhibition (n)	معرض الفضاء
the last (adj)	الأخير
the next (adj)	التالى
travel (led) (v)	يسافر
Valley Street (n)	شارع الوادى
vehicle (n)	مَركَبة (وسيلة نقل)
What time ...?	ما الوقت ...؟
Which ...?	أى ...؟

Cities/towns المدن

Al Balyana (n)	مدينة البَلَيَنا
Alexandria (n)	مدينة الإسكندرية
Aswan (n)	مدينة أسوان
Asyut/Assiut (n)	مدينة أسيوط
Cairo (n)	مدينة القاهرة
Edfu (n)	مدينة إدفو
Luxor (n)	مدينة الأقصر
Qena (n)	مدينة قنا
Suez (n)	مدينة السويس
Tanta (n)	مدينة طنطا

Lesson 4

add (ed) (v)	يضيف
Africa (n)	إفريقيا
Australia (n)	أستراليا
Bondi (n)	شاطئ بوندى بأستراليا
Central Station	محطة مركزية
desert (n)	صحراء
kilometre (km) (n)	كيلومتر
million (n)	مليون
mountain (n)	جبل
street (n)	شارع
Sydney (n)	مدينة سيدنى
the Nile (n)	نهر النيل

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

catch	a train	يلحق القطار	get	a text message from	يتلقى رسالة نصية من
follow	directions	يتبع الاتجاهات		a train	يأخذ قطارًا
write	a reply	يكتب ردا			

Lesson 4

get	somewhere	يصل إلى مكان ما	go	upstairs	يذهب للطابق العلوى

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

at about	فى حوالى	learn about	يتعلم عن
from ... until ...	من ... حتى ...	look forward to + v-ing/noun	يتطلع إلى
get back	يعود إلى	science of space	علوم الفضاء
in five minutes	خلال خمس دقائق		

Lesson 4

across desert/water	عبر الصحراء/الماء	look out of	ينظر من
better for	أفضل لـ	part of	جزء من
from the water	من الماء	special about	مميز عن
good for	مفيد لـ	travel on water	يسافر على الماء
in the world	فى العالم	way to + inf.	طريقة لـ
leave from	يغادر من	What type of ...?	ما نوع ...؟

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

below	أسفل	above	أعلى	start (ed)	يبدأ	finish/end (ed)	ينهى

Lesson 4

comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح	expensive	غالى الثمن	cheap	رخيص الثمن
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب	peaceful	هادئ	noisy	صاخب
				usual	عادى	unusual	غير عادى

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
catch	يلحق	caught	caught
leave	يغادر	left	left
show	يبين/يعرض	showed	shown
Lesson 4			
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3		
exhibition (n)	معرض	a place where you go to see paintings, photographs, objects, etc.
map (n)	خريطة	something you can use to follow directions
metro (n)	مترو	a vehicle you can use to travel in a city. Sometimes it travels underground
platform (n)	رصيف محطة	a place where you can catch a train
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	something you can use to find when a train or bus arrives or leaves

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children put up ..... of famous Egyptian scientists on the classroom walls.
   a) newspapers b) posters c) ferries d) reviews
2. Buses are popular types of ..... .
   a) books b) sports c) transport d) export
3. What's special ..... this exhibition?
   a) for b) with c) about d) on

Answers ١) ب ٢) د ٣) د

Language Notes

1. **take + وقت + to + inf.** يستغرق (للوقت)
   - The journey takes thirty minutes to get to the station.

2. **Shall + (subj) +inf. ...?** سوف **/ Let's + inf.** هيا بنا (هذه التعبيرات تستخدم للاقتراح)
   - Which train shall we **get**?
   - Let's **take** that.

3. **platform** رصيف محطة (قطار/مترو)
   pavement رصيف شارع/طريق
   - Which platform does the train leave from?
   - You should walk on the pavement. The road is very busy with cars.

4. **It's + adj.** الصفة **+ to + inf.** إنه من
   - It's interesting **to look** out of the window.

5. **see + object** (مفعول) **+ (v + ing) / (inf.)** يرى
   - You can see ferries **crossing/cross** the Nile.

6. **Prepositions of transport:** حروف الجر الخاصة بالمواصلات:
   by + train/bus/ferry/plane/car/taxi/metro حرف جر يأتى بعده المواصلات مباشرة
   on + a/an/the/my ... + train/bus/ferry/plane ...
   إذا جاءت كلمة بين حرف الجر والمواصلات
   in + a/an/the/my ... + car/taxi مع كلمة سيارة وتاكسى
   - I travel by train. / I travel on a train.
   - I travel by car. / I travel in a car.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shall we ..... the zoo?
   a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) to visiting
2. We went to Alexandria ..... our father's car.
   a) on b) in c) for d) by
3. I saw my brother ..... in the street.
   a) played b) to play c) to playing d) playing

Answers (1 a) (2 b) (3 d)

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you like visiting museums? Why?

3. *Khaled is going to the Space Exhibition from City University. Use the information from Exercise 1 to complete the chat with Fawzi.* *SB page 6*



Khaled : Hi, Fawzi. Would you like to come to the Space Exhibition (1) tomorrow? My dad is taking me.

Fawzi : Yes, please! What time does it start?

Khaled : It starts at **9.30.** We're going by metro.

Fawzi : Which train shall we get?

Khaled : The first metro train leaves at 8.20 and arrives at **8.30**.

Fawzi : That's an hour before the exhibition (2) starts!

Khaled : Perhaps we can leave later.

Fawzi : What time does the exhibition finish?

Khaled : It finishes at **2 pm**.

Fawzi : OK. Can we get a train in the afternoon to get back?

Khaled : Yes, one leaves at 1.15 pm and arrives at **1.25**.

Fawzi : Great! Let's take that.

(1) معرض الفضاء

(2) معرض

Post-reading question:

Complete the following sentences:

1. The exhibition is at ..... .
2. Fawzi and Khaled are going there by ..... .
3. The train takes ..... minutes.

Lesson 3

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- How do you travel to other cities?

6. Listen to Nadia and her mother. Where are they? *SB page 7*



Nadia : Which train do we need for Tanta?
Mother : We need the train to Alexandria. Look, it stops at Tanta.
Nadia : Oh yes. So the next train is at 11:30.
Mother : That's right.
Nadia : And when does it arrive?
Mother : It arrives at 13:00.
Nadia : Which platform does it leave from?
Mother : It's the Alexandria train, so it leaves from Platform 7.

Post-listening question:

- Where are Nadia and her mother going?

Lesson 3

Listening Text

2. Listen and choose the correct words. *WB page 74*

Good morning. This **is** the 11:30 train to Luxor. It **leaves** in five minutes. The train **stops** at Giza, Assiut and Qena. It **doesn't** stop at Al Balyana today because there are engineering works. The train **arrives** in Luxor at 23:15.

Lesson 4 **Reading Text**

Pre-reading question:
- What kinds of transport do you prefer?

SB page 8

2. *Read the texts and answer the questions.*





I love travelling by train because it's interesting to look out of the window. In one journey, you can see ferries(1) crossing the Nile, green valleys(2), peaceful villages and busy cities. Trains are often fast and comfortable(3), too. Egypt has the oldest railway in Africa. More than 800 million passengers(4) travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railway(5)! I take the train when I visit my grandparents in Edfu. It's my favourite journey.

Riham

(1) معديات
(2) أودية
(3) مريح
(4) ركاب
(5) خط سكة حديد
(6) الترام
(7) كهربى
(8) البيئة



Lots of people in Alexandria use the tram(6) to travel around the city. It's great way to travel! It's easy to use and it isn't expensive. Trams are electric(7), so they are better for the environment(8) than other types of transport.

Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual: they have two floors! I like sitting at the top and watching the streets below.

Hana

Post-reading questions:

1. What does Riham think of trains?
2. Why do you think trams are better for the environment than other types of transport?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Where's Sydney?

3. Complete the text with these words.

WB Page 75



Some people think that Sydney(1) in Australia has the best transport(2) in the world. Why? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all parts of the city. **Comfortable** buses go to the nearest beaches such as Bondi(3). If you want to get somewhere quickly, **fast** trains leave from Central Station(4) to many places, including the airport. It is quiet on the water, so ferries are **peaceful** and they are also **easy** to use. It is **interesting** to see the famous buildings from the water, too.

(1) مدينه سيدنى
(2) النقل
(3) شاطئ بوندى
(4) محطة مركزية

Post-reading question:

Complete the following sentences:

1. Sydney has the best transport because .....
2. ..... are peaceful and easy to use.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Zeina is a famous artist. She will have a/an ..... of her pictures.
   a) station b) poster c) exhibition d) map
2. Can you find our place on this .....?
   a) map b) train c) bus d) mop
3. Which ..... does the train leave from?
   a) street b) lane c) pavement d) platform
4. You can cross the river on a ..... .
   a) ferry b) tram c) train d) bus
5. Their car is more modern, it's more ..... .
   a) bad b) boring c) comfortable d) noisy
6. Many people travel to work each day by ..... . They prefer trains.
   a) railway b) air c) sea d) water
7. The metro carries millions of ..... each day.
   a) drivers b) passengers c) messengers d) divers
8. It's a three-hour train ..... from Cairo to Alexandria.
   a) rail b) valley c) energy d) journey
9. A ..... is a vehicle you can use to travel in a city. Sometimes it travels underground.
   a) bus b) ferry c) metro d) tram
10. Nobody likes to live in the ..... . It's very hot with no water or plants.
    a) countryside b) jungle c) desert d) forest
11. They climbed up the ..... and reached the top.
    a) river b) lake c) valley d) mountain
12. My father became very worried when he ..... a text message from my brother.
    a) got b) borrowed c) won d) sent
13. Goodbye now! I'll call you from home ..... .
    a) later b) latter c) latest d) late

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandfather is very ill, so he can't ..... upstairs. He always lives on the ground floor.

a) go b) climb c) carry d) catch

2 If you ..... a train now, you'll arrive in time.

a) leave b) miss c) take d) stay

3 I look ..... meeting you next week.

a) after b) up c) for d) forward to

4 Why are you happy? Did she tell you anything .....?

a) fast b) noisy c) interesting d) boring

5 It is so ..... here that I can't sleep.

a) quiet b) interesting c) comfortable d) noisy

6 It's better ..... you to take the train because there's a lot of traffic.

a) on b) at c) in d) for

7 If you look ..... the bedroom window, you can see the Nile.

a) out of b) up c) at d) for

8 Look up the bus times in the local ..... .

a) blackboard b) album c) poster d) timetable

9 Most of the best ..... in the exhibition are Egyptian.

a) albums b) paintings c) chats d) guards

10 Trains run on two ..... .

a) rails b) poles c) sticks d) lakes

11 He doesn't talk to anyone, ... me.

a) such b) as c) including d) like

12 The ..... will stop you if you don't show them your card.

a) passengers b) guards c) drivers d) thieves

13 His father is a great engineer. He did great ..... works.

a) engineer b) engineering c) engineered d) engineers

(B) Language

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

هيا بنا نتذكر زمن المضارع البسيط:

Form التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع ⟶ inf./don't + inf.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد ⟶ verb(s, es, ies)/doesn't + inf.

- I **eat** my breakfast at seven.
- She always **washes** the dishes.
- They **don't like** meat.
- Nabil **doesn't come** late.

Question السؤال

Do/ Does + subject + inf. ...?

Wh.word + do/does + subject + inf. ...?

- **Do** you **get** up early?
- **Does** Ali **live** in Cairo?
- Where do you **work**?
- How **does** he go to work?

Usage الاستخدام

Use the present simple to talk about scheduled events.

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الأحداث المجدولة (أى لوجود مواعيد عامة لكافة الجمهور). مثل التحدث عن مواعيد المواصلات/البرامج المذاعة فى التلفاز/فتح أو غلق الأماكن العامة/وأى خدمات عامة لكافة الجمهور).

- The first metro train leaves at 8.20.
- **A:** What time does the exhibition start? **B:** It starts at 9.30.

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The train ..... (will arrive) in London at 3.45 pm.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هى (arrives) لأن وصول الطائرة فى موعد محدد وعام.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When ..... (do) the plane to Rome leave?
2. The exhibition ..... (finish) at 2 pm.
3. ..... (Does) you go to school on foot?

Answers 3 Do 2 finishes 1 does

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The show ..... at 6 o'clock as usual.
   a) begin b) begins c) will begin d) is beginning
2. The train to Aswan and the train to Luxor both ..... at 6.20 am.
   a) leave b) leaves c) is leaving d) are leaving
3. What time ..... we have the geography test?
   a) were b) are c) do d) have
4. School ..... at half past eight.
   a) starts b) start c) starting d) is starting
5. When does the play .....?
   a) finish b) finishes c) finishing d) will finish
6. The bank ..... at four o'clock.
   a) close b) closing c) closes d) has closed
7. What time ..... the shops open?
   a) does b) doing c) did d) do
8. **A:** When .....? **B:** At 3 pm as usual.
   a) the train leaves b) is the train leaving
   c) will the train leave d) does the train leave
9. There's no point leaving yet. The shop ..... until 10 o'clock.
   a) don't open b) open
   c) opens d) doesn't open

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1. Which day do the exhibition open? (.....)
2. My sister's birthday be on Tuesday. (.....)
3. The next train come in 25 minutes. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The first performance of the school play is next Wednesday. (begins)

.....

2. The film starts at quarter to nine. (is)

.....

3. What time is the departure (مغادرة) of your plane? (does)

.....

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Discussing timetables and public transport

مناقشة الجداول الزمنية والمواصلات العامة

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
When is the exhibition?	متى يكون المعرض؟	It is at 09:30.	إنه فى التاسعة والنصف.
What time does the exhibition finish?	ما موعد انتهاء المعرض؟	It finishes at 02:00 pm.	سينتهى فى الثانية مساءً.
What time is the next train?	ما موعد القطار التالى؟	The next train goes in five minutes.	القطار التالى سينطلق خلال خمس دقائق.
What time does the train leave?	متى سيغادر القطار؟	It leaves at 11:30 am.	سيغادر فى الحادية عشر والنصف صباحًا.
Which platform does the train leave from?	من أى رصيف سيغادر القطار؟	It leaves from platform 7.	سيغادر من الرصيف رقم سبعة.
Where does the train to Aswan go from?	من أين سينطلق القطار إلى أسوان؟	It goes from platform 5.	سينطلق من الرصيف رقم خمسة.
What is the last station that the train goes to?	ما هى آخر محطة سيذهب إليها القطار؟	It goes to Alexandria.	سيذهب إلى الإسكندرية.
Which platform should I go to?	إلى أى رصيف يجب أن أذهب؟	You should go to platform three.	يجب أن تذهب إلى الرصيف رقم ثلاثة.
How long does the journey take by metro?	كم تستغرق الرحلة بالمترو؟	It takes 30 minutes.	تستغرق ثلاثون دقيقة.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A passenger is at the train station.

Passenger : I want a ticket to Aswan, please.

Ticket seller : That's L.E. 120.

Passenger : Here you are. (1).....?

Ticket seller : It leaves in 15 minutes.

Passenger : (2).....?

Ticket seller : The journey takes 18 hours.

Passenger : (3)..... at all stations?

Ticket seller : No, it stops only at the capital cities.

Passenger : (4).....?

Ticket seller : (5)..... from platform 9.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask about the arrival (وصول) of the train in Luxor.

.....

2. You tell your friend the time of the next lesson.

.....

3. Your father asks you what time the match starts tonight.

.....

4. Your sister wants to know when the bus leaves.

.....

5. You ask about the platform the train leaves from.

.....

6. You are asked about the time of the film this evening.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about the types of transport of the city you live in

كيف تكتب عن أنواع المواصلات فى المدينة التى تعيش فيها

- I live in ..... .
- It has many types of transport such as ..... .
- It has the best transport because ..... .
- The buses are very comfortable because ..... .
- Trains are very fast.
- It has a wonderful airport ..... .

Writing tips

Good writing should have all of these traits:
Ideas: interesting and important
Organisation: logical and effective
Word Choice: specific and memorable

الكتابة الجيدة يجب أن تحتوى على هذه السمات:
أفكار مهمة وشيقة
تنظيم منطقى وفعال
اختيار لكلمات مميزة وبارزة

Example

"Types of transport"

I live in Alexandria. I live with my parents, one sister and two brothers. We live in a large house with a garden. Alexandria has the best transport because buses, trains, ferries and planes are comfortable. You can travel on a plane from Alexandria Airport. Of course it's the fastest type of transport. Alexandria has comfortable buses that use natural gas and don't pollute the environment. If you want to get somewhere comfortably, you can use trams. They are in all the streets of Alexandria. It is peaceful on the water, so ferries are interesting and they are also easy to use. It is fun to see the famous buildings from the water, too.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

The metro

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 3&4 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Lisa wants to buy a train ticket to Benha.

Lisa : I'd like a ticket to Benha, please.
Ticket seller : Here it is.
Lisa : (1)..... it cost?
Ticket seller : It costs L.E. 50.
Lisa : (2)..... the train leave from?
Ticket seller : It leaves from platform 2.
Lisa : (3)..... arrive?
Ticket seller : It (4)..... .
Lisa : (5)..... .
Ticket seller : You're welcome.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 A friend asks about the arrival of the school bus.

.....

2 You tell your parents what time your summer camp starts.

.....

3 You ask the assistant which platform the train leaves from.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She studied engineering and art history at the ..... .
a) school b) university c) laboratory d) exhibition

2 We had a nice ..... for over an hour. We talked about the use of the internet.
a) journey b) trip c) chat d) picnic

3 I don't like waiting for ..... transport.
a) public b) general c) special d) private

4 The ..... that we are trying to reach is behind the next hill.
a) desert b) valley c) space d) stop

5 It is ..... for him to come early. He is always late.
a) uncomfortable b) comfortable c) usual d) unusual

6 Edison invented the ..... light.
a) electrical b) electric c) electricity d) electrician

7 If you want to ..... somewhere quickly, you should take the metro.
a) get on b) get off c) get to d) get

8 Your mathematics exam starts at 08:30 and ..... at 11:00. Make sure you are on time!
a) finishing b) will finish c) finishes d) finish

9 We ..... an art lesson at 10:20.
a) had b) are having c) has d) have

10 **A:** When ..... the sale start? **B:** Next week.
a) do b) does c) did d) is

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The plane ..... (arrive) in London at 11:45.
2 The music festival ..... (not end) on Monday.
3 She ..... (have) a maths class tomorrow morning.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 The plane arrival is at 18:00 tomorrow. (arrives)
.....

2 The opening hour of the restaurant is at 19:15 tonight. (opens)
.....

3 The lesson is in five minutes. (starts)
.....

6 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Amr to tell him about the most comfortable transport in your city. Your name is Adham.

- Your email address is adham22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is amr@yahoo.com.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB Pages 9 - 11
WB Pages 76 - 78

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

arrange (d) (v)	يرتب	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
closed (adj)	مغلق	swimming pool (n)	حمام السباحة
final (n/adj)	نهائى	then (adv)	إذن/ثم
politely (adv)	بأدب		

Lesson 6

advert (ed) (n/v)	إعلان/يعلن	online review (n)	نقد عبر الإنترنت
brochure (n)	منشور	perhaps (adv)	ربما
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	pottery (n)	الفخار
gardener (n)	بستانى/جناينى	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
invitation (n)	دعوة	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	reason (n)	سبب
Khedive (n)	الخديوى	share (d) (v)	يشارك
map (n)	خريطة	the country (n)	الريف
nearby (adv)	مجاور/قريب	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة
nowhere (adv)	لا مكان	wild (adj)	برى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

activity (n)	نشاط	not sure	غير متأكد
conversation (n)	محادثة	opinions (n)	آراء
describe (d) (v)	يصف	role-play (ed) (v)	يقوم بلعب الأدوار
feelings (n)	مشاعر		

Lesson 6

address (n)	عنوان	Giza (n)	الجيزة
after that	بعد ذلك	history (n)	التاريخ
because (conj)	لأن	lake (n)	بحيرة
café (n)	مقهى	lovely (adj)	جميل
check (ed) (v)	يراجع	mask (n)	قناع
El-Dokki (n)	الدقى	missing (adj)	مفقود
El-Orman Garden (n)	حديقة الأورمان	museum (n)	متحف
facts (n)	حقائق	park (n)	حديقة عامة
famous (adj)	مشهور	partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
fantastic (adj)	رائع	plant (ed) (n/v)	نبات/يزرع
flower (n)	زهرة	ready (adj)	مستعد/جاهز
French (adj/n)	فرنسى	spelling (n)	هجاء
garden (n)	حديقة	supermarket (n)	سوبر ماركت

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

give ▶ an answer	يعطى إجابة	make ▶ suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
make ▶ a decision	يأخذ/يصنع قرارًا	respond ▶ to suggestions	يستجيب للاقتراحات

Lesson 6

from all over	من كل أنحاء	make ▶ lunch	يُعد الغداء
get ▶ married	يتزوج	make ▶ sure	يتأكد
get ▶ there	يصل إلى هناك	plant ▶ a forest	يزرع غابة
go ▶ there	يذهب إلى هناك	take ▶ a boat on the lake	يأخذ قاربًا فى البحيرة
		there's lots to see	هناك الكثير لتراه

prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لايتفق مع	invite to	يدعو إلى
agree on	يوافق على	meet up	يتقابل
arrange to	يرتب لـ	on the river	في النهر
by the bridge	بجوار الكوبرى	put into	يضع في
different from	مختلف عن	think about	يفكر/يعتقد في
go on a ferry	يذهب في معدية	would prefer to	يفضل أن

Lesson 6

at a café	في المقهى	on the lake	في البحيرة
at a nearby shop	في متجر قريب	on weekdays	في أيام الأسبوع
find out	يكتشف	reply to	يرد على
for lunch	على وجبة الغداء	round	حول
forms of	أنواع/أشكال لـ	send to	يرسل إلى
learn about	يتعلم عن	thank you for	شكرًا لك على
near	بالقرب من	walk around	يمشي حول

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 5

agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق	inside	بالداخل	outside	بالخارج
indoors	داخل مبنى	outdoors	خارج مبنى				

Lesson 6

careful	حريص	careless	مهمل	comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح	important	هام	unimportant	غير هام

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5				
do	يفعل/يؤدى		did	done
give	يعطى		gave	given
meet	يقابل		met	met
Lesson 6				
become	يصبح		became	become
grow	ينمو/يزرع		grew	grown
wear	يرتدى/يلبس		wore	worn
bring	يحضر		brought	brought
sell	يبيع		sold	sold

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Women like to wear expensive ..... .
   a) drawing b) jewellery c) review d) suggestion
2. Write a text message ..... a friend to the exhibition with you and your family.
   a) suggesting b) sending c) inviting d) inventing
3. My sister and I like to walk ..... the park.
   a) way b) a round c) a way d) around

Answers (١ ب) (٢ د) (٣ ب)

Language Notes

1. **indoors** داخل مبنى **/ outdoors** خارج مبنى
   indoor داخلى **/ outdoor** خارجى
   هى ظرف تصف الفعل، لا يأتى بعدها اسم
   هى صفة تصف الاسم ويأتى بعدها اسم
   - I like reading outdoors.
   - He spends his time indoors.
   - I like outdoor activities.
   - He likes doing indoor games.

2. هناك بعض الكلمات التى لا يأتى قبلها حرف جر بمعنى «إلى» مثل:
   home / here / there / somewhere
   - I arrived home late.
   - I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors.
   - He went there before.
   - Come here now.

3 **was/were + born** وُلِدَ
- Waleed was born in 1985.

4 **ten years old** عمره ١٠ سنوات (لا يأتى بعدها اسم)
- He is ten years old.

a ten-year-old + اسم بالغ من العمر ١٠ سنوات (يأتى بعدها اسم لأنها تعتبر صفة للاسم لذلك لا تُجمع)
- He is a ten-year-old boy.

5 **get + شخص** يُحضر شخصاً
- What time shall we come to get you?

6 **enough for + مفعول + to + inf.** بدرجة كافية لـ
- There are enough chairs for every one to sit on.

7 **mind + (v + ing) / (noun)** يمانع
- I don't mind **walking** round the lake.

8 **Let + مفعول + inf.** يسمح/ يدع
- There's a new computer game which lets you **practise** your English.

9 **I'd prefer to + inf.** أفضل أن
- I'd prefer to **go** to the park.

10 **look forward to + (noun/v+ing)** يتطلع إلى
- I'm looking forward to **our trip** to the El-Orman Gardens!
- She looks forward to **seeing** her grandparents.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Do you mind ..... with us?
a) go b) going c) to go d) to going

2 My father always ..... my sister from school.
a) has b) gives c) visits d) gets

3 I usually have a ten ..... break.
a) minute b) minutes c) minute's d) minutes'

Answers ١) b ٢) d ٣) a

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - What do you prefer to do at your free time?

1. *Listen to the conversation. Why doesn't Basel want to go to the sports centre, park or the museum?* SB page 9





Basel : Hi, Taher. Would you like to meet up (1) tomorrow?

Taher : Hi Basel. That would be great. Shall we go to the sports centre?

Basel : I'm not sure. I hurt my leg, so I can't play sport at the moment.

Taher : Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then?

Basel : Maybe (2), but it's a long way to walk. I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors (3).

Taher : Oh, OK. How about the museum?

Basel : Perhaps (4) ... but it's always busy on Saturdays.

Taher : OK, so what would you like to do?

Basel : I think it would be nice to watch a computer game. There's a new one which lets you practise (5) your English.

Taher : That sounds like a great idea. Why don't you come to my house?

Basel : I'd love to! Thanks, Taher. See you tomorrow!

(1) يتقابل
(2) ربما
(3) بالداخل
(4) ربما
(5) يمارس

Post-listening question:

- Why doesn't Basel want to go to the museum?



تطبيق الأضواء

نمّ مهاراتك من خلال دورات تنمية المهارات المقدمة من مبادرة "اعرف" برعاية الأضواء.

App Store

حمّل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال www.aladwaa.com

Lesson 5 — Reading and listening

2. *Put the dialogue into the correct order. Then listen and check.* *WB page 76*

Injy : **Would you like to meet up** tomorrow, Lina?
Lina : **That would be great**, Injy. **Shall we** go to the museum?
Injy : **I'm not sure**. I think the museum's closed tomorrow.
Lina : OK. **Shall we** go to the shops, then?
Injy : I'd prefer to go somewhere outside. **How about** the park?
Lina : I like the park, but I think **it would be nice to** go on a ferry on the river. **Would you like to do that**?
Injy : Yes, **I'd love to**! **Why don't we** meet by the bridge?

Lesson 6 — Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Why should we keep gardens clean?

2. *Read the email from Reem. What is Reem sending to Azza?* *SB page 10*

Hi Azza

I'm looking forward to our trip to the El-Orman Garden (1)! The garden opens at 9 am, and it takes about an hour to get there by car. What time shall we come to get you?

The online reviews (2) are fantastic. The gardens are very big and there's lots to see. Make sure that you wear comfortable (3) shoes!

I'm sending you a map (4) of the garden. You can see wild (5) flowers and plants from all over the country. There is also a small lake and a museum. What would you like to see first?

We could bring some food with us or we could go to a nearby café for lunch. What would you prefer? There is also a lovely shop near the garden that sells pottery (6) and jewellery (7)!

See you Saturday,
Reem

(1) حديقة الأورمان
(2) مقالات نقدية
(3) مريح
(4) خريطة
(5) برى
(6) فخار
(7) مجوهرات

Post-reading question: - How long does it take to get to the El-Orman Garden?

Lesson 6 — Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you like walking? Why/Why not?

2. *Read the email reply to an invitation. Write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.*

WB page 77

From : Munir
To : Hazem
Dear Hazem,

Thank you for asking me to visit the lake. I would love to go there! I will be ready at 7 am, so you can come to get me any time after that. Yes, I have some comfortable shoes[1]. I don't mind walking round the lake. ***I like walking in the country***[2]. To answer your question, perhaps we should take a boat on the lake first, before it is too hot. My mother is going to make me some lunch to take with us, but she always makes lots. ***I'm sure there will be enough for us to share***[3]***!*** See you on Saturday.
Yours, Munir

(1) حذاء مريح
(2) الريف
(3) يشارك

Post-reading question: - Who is going to make lunch?

Lesson 7 — Reading Text

2. *Complete the sentences with at, in or on and the correct form of the verb in brackets.*

WB page 78

I'm Tarek and I live in a small village. **On** weekdays, there **are** two buses a day to the nearest city. The first bus **is at** 7 am and the second one **leaves** late **in** the afternoon. My father **doesn't take** the early bus because it is very slow. The traffic is always bad in the mornings. **At** the weekend, there is only one bus, which **goes** at 8 am. There is not much traffic then, so it **arrives** in the city **at** 8.30 am. There is a market in the city at this time, so I often take this bus with my mother.

Life Skills

Sometimes other people prefer to do different things from you. Remember to think about their opinions and feelings before you make a final decision together.
في بعض الأحيان يفضل الأشخاص الآخرون القيام بأشياء مختلفة عنك. تذكر أن تفكر في آرائهم ومشاعرهم قبل اتخاذ قرار نهائي معًا.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The children played ..... today, because it was very hot outside. WB
a) outdoors b) indoors c) outdoor d) indoor

2 They are building a ..... over the lake to help people cross the lake.
a) street b) road c) ferry d) bridge

3 I read a ..... about Hurghada and its interesting places.
a) ticket b) diary c) poem d) brochure

4 The poor man has ..... to live in.
a) nothing b) nowhere c) none d) somewhere

5 We have a ..... who plants some trees in our garden.
a) cook b) gardener c) singer d) waiter

6 Be careful in that shop. It sells ....., which breaks easily. WB
a) ties b) masks c) belts d) pottery

7 The two women had very different ..... about that book.
a) objects b) figures c) opinions d) masks

8 My friend's angry words hurt my ..... .
a) feelings b) opinions c) activities d) forms

9 I cannot ..... a decision before I discuss this with my parents.
a) make b) hear c) do d) take

10 Did you hear the ..... decision from your father? He won't talk about that again.
a) final b) natural c) local d) public

11 My sister is going to ..... married next month.
a) have b) give c) get d) make

12 They don't agree ..... a date for the wedding.
a) on b) with c) to d) for

13 I got full marks in the ..... test. I wrote all the words correctly.
a) spelling b) speaking c) listening d) reading

14 The office is ..... at the weekend. Nobody is there at that time.
a) close b) closed c) open d) opened

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They decided to go ..... a ferry for a picnic on the lake.
a) on b) for c) at d) by

2 We must ..... sure this doesn't happen again.
a) do b) take c) start d) make

3 The whole family sat ..... for dinner.
a) only b) lonely c) together d) alone

4 Come on, wake up, Bodi. Breakfast is ..... .
a) final b) ready c) busy d) empty

5 My mother has some beautiful ....., which she got from her mother when she got married. WB
a) jewellery b) planes c) questions d) parks

6 Thanks for your kind ....., but I can't come because I am too busy.
a) invitation b) invention c) production d) pollution

7 I met my friends ..... the bridge yesterday. Then we took a ferry to cross the lake.
a) of b) by c) for d) out

8 There are ..... flowers in the mountains. No one grows them.
a) home b) farm c) pet d) wild

9 The ..... is more peaceful than the city. It's quieter.
a) century b) country c) ferry d) energy

10 Hisham was born in 1981, which was in the last ..... . WB
a) city b) country c) century d) center

11 Each student has to do many ..... at school.
a) tools b) activities c) panels d) powers

12 My secretary will phone you to ..... for a meeting.
a) advert b) share c) discuss d) arrange

13 I think you'll find these cushions more ..... than those. You'll be happy.
a) unfriendly b) ugly c) comfortable d) uncomfortable

14 We ..... lots of decisions to make at the meeting tomorrow.
a) have b) make c) do d) spend

(B) Skills

1. Speaking

Making and responding to suggestions تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها

Situation ما يقال في هذا الموقف | Response جملة الرد

Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

هل تود أن نتقابل غدًا؟

That would be great! سيكون ذلك عظيمًا!

Would you like to do that? هل تريد أن تفعل ذلك؟

That sounds like a great idea. I'd love to! تبدو فكرة عظيمة. أود ذلك!

Shall we go to the park, then? هل نذهب للحديقة العامة، بعد ذلك؟

I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors.

أفضل أن نذهب لمكان داخلي.

Why don't you come to my house? لما لا تأتي لمنزلي؟

I'm not sure! لست متأكدًا من ذلك!

How about the museum? ماذا عن المتحف؟

That would be wonderful! سيكون ذلك رائعًا.

We could go to the museum café for lunch.

يمكننا أن نذهب إلى كافيتريا المتحف للغداء.

It would be nice to play a computer game.

سيكون من اللطيف أن نلعب لعبة من ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina invites Sally to go to the swimming pool.

Dina: Would you like to meet up tomorrow, Sally?

Sally: That would be great, Dina. (1)..... ?

Dina: (2)..... . I think it will be a bit cold.

Sally: OK. Shall we watch TV, then?

Dina: I'd (3)..... .

Sally: (4)..... the park?

Dina: I'm not sure. I want something new.

Sally: (5)..... to go on a ferry on the river?

Dina: Yes, I'd love to! Why don't we meet by the bridge?

Sally: That's a good idea.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend suggests that you join a sports centre together. Suggest something else.

.....

2. You would like to watch TV.

.....

3. Your friend suggests going to the cinema today but you disagree politely.

.....

4. You suggest going to Alex to spend the summer holiday.

.....

5. You invite your friend to go shopping with you.

.....

6. Your friend suggests playing video games tonight at his home but you are busy.

.....

Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer and Magdy discuss how to spend their time together.

Tamer : Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

Magdy : Yes,(1).....! Shall we play video games?

Tamer : I'm not sure. I'd prefer to go out.

Magdy : OK. (2)..... to the museum, then?

Tamer : I'd prefer to see nature. How about the park?

Magdy : That would be great!

Tamer : (3)..... we meet at 9:30?

Magdy : That's a good idea.

Tamer : I think it (4)..... nice to bring some sandwiches with you.

Magdy : (5)..... great!

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You invite your friend to your birthday.

.....

2 You suggest your friend politely to go with you to the library.

.....

3 Your brother wants both of you to watch a film on TV. Refuse politely.

.....

4 You prefer going to the park.

.....

5 Your father asks for your suggestion for the next weekend.

.....

6 You tell your friends to meet up tomorrow.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write an invitation email

كيفية كتابة بريد إلكترونى للدعوة

- Start and end your email correctly.
- Invite your friend then tell him/her what you will do.
- Check your work.

Writing tips

Don't over-complicate your sentences as they will become hard to read. Avoid using large or difficult words. Don't make your sentences too long.

لا تبالغ في تعقيد جملك لأنها ستصبح صعبة القراءة: تجنب استخدام كلمات طويلة و صعبة ولا تجعل جملك طويلة بشكل مبالغ فيه.

To : batoul@yahoo.com
From : basmala@yahoo.com
Subject : Invitation

Dear Batoul,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I'm writing this email to invite you to have a trip with me to a fantastic place. Would you like to go to the Museum of African Art? The museum opens at 9.30 and it takes about an hour to get there by car. The museum is very big and there's a lot to see. Make sure that you wear comfortable shoes! There's also a great exhibition about Egypt. We could go to the museum café for lunch or we could bring food with us. What would you prefer? Remember me to your family. I'm looking forward to seeing you. With my best wishes.

See you on Saturday.

Yours,
Basmala

Check Point: Write an email of (110) words to invite your friend Peter to visit Egypt. Your name is Mustafa. Your email address is mustafa@student.com.
Your friend's email address is peter@yahoo.com.

Lessons 5&6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nawal invites Nada to spend a day with her at home.

Nawal : Hi, Nada. It's me, Nawal. Would you like to come to my home?

Nada : (1)..... .

Nawal : (2)..... watch a movie together?

Nada : I'm not sure. I'd like to do something useful.

Nawal : Ok. (3)..... we read the new storybook?

Nada : (4).....?

Nawal : It's about a small girl who has an adventure.

Nada : I'd prefer to design the poster for the school project together.

Nawal : (5)..... .

Nada : Bye! See you there.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend invites you to his birthday party. You agree.

.....

2 Your friend doesn't know what to do on holiday.

.....

3 You don't like your friend's suggestion about going to the cinema.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Basmala offered her friend some coffee but she refused ..... .

a) lonely b) especially c) really d) politely

2 Can we all go to the swimming ..... this afternoon?

a) lake b) pool c) pond d) river

3 Someone came out with the most useful ..... .

a) suggest b) suggested c) suggesting d) suggestion

4 A ..... is a period of a hundred years.

a) month b) year c) century d) decade

5 Some bowls are made of ..... and wood.

a) cloth b) pottery c) wool d) leather

6 She always wears her expensive ..... on happy occasions.

a) jewellery b) pottery c) sculpture d) mask

7 She sent us her ..... of the research online.

a) viewer b) interview c) revision d) review

8 What do you usually do ..... Mother's Day?

a) at b) in c) by d) on

9 My office is in the building ..... the station.

a) on b) near c) next d) between

10 In Egypt, school ..... in September and ends in May.

a) start b) started c) starts d) will start

4 Fill in the gaps:

We live in a small village far from the city. There are only two buses to the city in the mornings. The first bus (1)..... at 07:00 am and arrives at 08:15 because it (2)..... stop at all stations. It stops only at the main ones. The second one leaves at 09:00 am, but it (3)..... two hours because it (4)..... at every station.

5 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Sayed to invite him to spend a day out together. Your name is Said and your email address is said@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sayed@student.com.

Unit 1 Review

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advert (ed)	إعلان/يعلن	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
airport	مطار	online review	مقالة نقدية عبر الإنترنت
arrange (d)	يرتب	paintings	لوحات
attractive	جذاب	passenger	مسافر/راكب
brochure	منشور	peaceful	هادئ/آمن
calm = quiet	هادئ	platform	رصيف محطة
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	pollution	تلوث
comfortable	مريح	pottery	الفخار
electric	كهربائى (يدار بالكهرباء)	prefer (red)	يفضل
energy	طاقة	public transport	مواصلات عامة
engineering works	أعمال هندسية	rails	قضبان حديدية
environment	البيئة	railway	سكة حديد
especially	خاصة	reach (ed)	يصل إلى
exhibition	معرض	share (d)	يشارك
ferry/ferries	عبّارة/معدية	stop	موقف/يتوقف
floor	طابق/دور	suggest (ed)	يقترح
gardener	بستانى/جناينى	the country	الريف
guard	حارس	timetable	جدول مواعيد
indoors	داخلى	traffic	حركة المرور
invite (d)	يدعو	tram	الترام
jewellery	مجوهرات	trip	رحلة قصيرة
mask	قناع	university	جامعة
monuments	آثار	usual	معتاد

Places الأماكن

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	restaurant	مطعم
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	shopping centre	مركز تسوق
café	مقهى/كافيه	sports centre	مركز رياضى
museum	متحف	station	محطة

(B) Language

1 Giving directions: إعطاء الاتجاهات:

نستخدم الفعل في المصدر لإعطاء الاتجاهات.

- Turn right/left at the traffic lights.
- Go straight on this road.

2 Prepositions of time: حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمان:

Preposition	Usage
in	Months/Seasons/Years/Centuries/Times of day/Longer periods of time
on	Days of the week / Days + parts of days / Dates /Special days
at	Clock times /Festivals /exact or a particular time
no preposition	next / last / this / every / today / tomorrow / yesterday

3 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع ← inf. (eat/wash/cry)
He, She, It, اسم مفرد ← inf. + s, es, ies (eats/washes/cries)

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الأحداث المجدولة (أى لوجود مواعيد عامة لكافة الجمهور).

- **A:** What time does the exhibition start? **B:** It starts at 09:30.

(C) Skills

Speaking

1. Asking for and giving directions

- How do I get/go from the market to the cinema?
  - Take the second road, turn right, it's on the left.
- Could you tell me the way to the park?
  - Go straight on. It's on the right, opposite the bank.

2. Discussing timetables and public transport

- **A:** When does the first train leave? **B:** It leaves at 7:00.
- **A:** How long does the journey take by metro? **B:** It takes 30 minutes.

3. Making and responding to suggestions

- **A:** Would you like to meet up tomorrow? **B:** That would be great!
- **A:** Why don't you come to my house? **B:** I'm not sure!
- **A:** How about the museum? **B:** That would be wonderful!

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 1 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) **Eman** : Shall we go to the shops, Sama?

Sama : .....

B) **Alaa** : .....?

Sameer : I'm not sure. I think the museum is closed tomorrow.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. It's next to the library and	**a)** take the second road.
2. From the sports centre, go	**b)** the afternoon.
3. Nader usually goes to the park on	**c)** start?
4. Sometimes I go swimming in	**d)** opposite the aquarium.
5. What time does the exhibition	**e)** Friday afternoons.
	f) straight on for about 20 metres.

Answers: **1.** ( ) **2.** ( ) **3.** ( ) **4.** ( ) **5.** ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about TEN (10) sentences on:

"Your town"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 1

Based on Unit 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A passenger asks the clerk for some help.

Passenger : Sir, please help me.
Clerk : Yes, I am here to help you. (1).....?
Passenger : I want to go to Alexandria. (2).....?
Clerk : You should go to platform 12.
Passenger : That is too far, (3).....?
Clerk : Yes, but there is no hurry. The train (4)..... .
You have much time.
Passenger : I know that. But I have many bags with me.
Clerk : Don't worry about that, I will ask someone to bring a trolley for you.
Passenger : Thank you so much for your help.
Clerk : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask about the way to the library.

.....

2. Your friend asks you about the time of the film tonight.

.....

3. You suggest having a day out.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Tim,

How are you? Would you like to visit us this summer? In July, we are having a big party. It will be really fun. I want to have some great music, so I am going to find a good DJ. My parents will pay for the food and drinks. My sister won't be there because she is travelling to Canada with my aunt. They are flying to Montreal and then they are going to Vancouver by train. They won't come back until August. Why don't you come with our old friends? I think it would be nice to play music together as we used to do. We could play video games after the party. It would be nice to bring the latest games with you. I know you keep the latest ones. I hope you can come to the party! Write soon and tell me you agree!

See you soon.

Yours, Ben

A) Answer the following questions:

1 What type of text is it?

.....

2 What is the main idea of the text?

.....

3 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 The party will be in ..... this summer.

a) May b) June c) July d) August

5 His sister and aunt will come back in ..... .

a) May b) June c) July d) August

6 They will ..... after the party.

a) play games b) play music

c) eat together d) bring friends

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We had dinner at a ..... in Cairo.

a) station b) library c) restaurant d) centre

2 If there's a ..... café, we could stop for a snack.

a) by b) next c) nearby d) near

3 They damaged one of the old ..... in the city and replaced it with a modern tower block.

a) buildings b) machines c) tools d) panels

4 There was nothing special ..... the meal; it was usual.

a) about b) in c) on d) for

5 This building is quite high. It has five ..... .

a) flowers b) floras c) flours d) floors

6 When we were in Luxor, the guide showed us the ..... of an ancient temple.

a) exhibition b) ruins c) platform d) mask

7 Egypt's Al-Ahly was named as "African club of the ..... ".

a) month b) year c) country d) century

8 To go to the supermarket, go ..... the bus stop, then turn left.

a) past b) next c) on d) between

9 See you ..... the afternoon.

a) at b) in c) on d) for

10 The match ..... at seven tomorrow evening.

a) start b) starting c) starts d) will start

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We have tea ..... (at) the morning.

2 The library is at the end of the road, ... (in) the right.

3 The film ..... (will begin) at 8 o'clock.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Let's visit our grandmother next week. (Shall)

.....

2 The café is at the end of the street. (corner)

.....

3 The end of the film is at half past nine. (finishes)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Comfortable transport"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 1

Think and Create

The teacher asked you to create a fact file about one of these topics:

Note that: A Fact file is a short report of all the most important information on one subject. This subject can be a thing, a place or even a person.

1. The city you want to visit

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Where is it? What does it look like?
- How many people live there?
- Which places would you like to visit? And what is special about this city?
- What is the most popular sport in it?



2. The El-Orman Garden

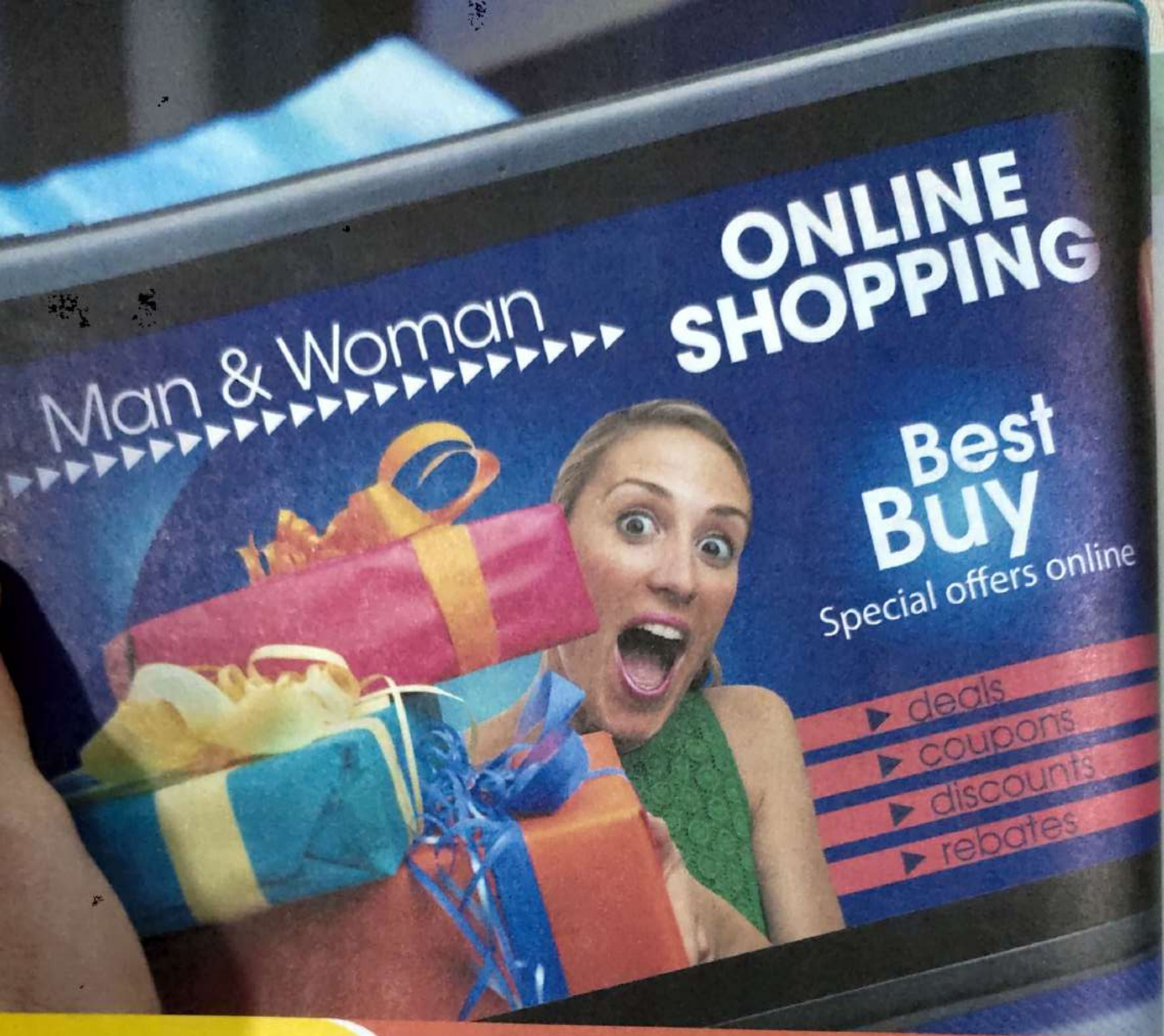
Use these guiding points to help you:

- Where is it located?
- What was the nationality of the gardener who planted it?
- When did the El-Orman Garden become famous?
- When is it open?
- What can people see there?
- What is special about this garden?



Tips

1 ➤ A suitable title
2 ➤ An introduction
3 ➤ Main ideas and information
4 ➤ Resources



Unit 2 Let's go shopping

Objectives of the unit

Reading : An online support message; an advert for handicrafts; online reviews

Writing : Emails asking for and giving information about handicrafts; an online review

Listening : A radio advert; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint

Speaking : Talking about things in the home; buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint

Language : both/and, either/or, neither/ nor

Life Skills : Self-management: keeping calm;

Critical thinking: evaluating the pros and cons of online shopping.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين ● تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

Warm Up

Those teenagers are very confused because they don't know which item they can use. Let's match to help them.



I am late for work, but I have to cook something quickly for my little sister.





I want to boil some water to make my father a cup of tea.





I bought a lot of vegetables and fruits. I want them to stay fresh for a long time.





I have a headache. I want to drink coffee.



After helping those people, can you answer these questions?

1. Which items do you want to buy in your house?

.....

2. In your opinion, what is the most expensive item and what's the most useful one?

.....

Lessons 1 & 2

SB Pages 12 - 15
WB Pages 79 & 80

(A) Vocabulary

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n)	noun
(v)	verb
(adj)	adjective
(adv)	adverb
(prep)	preposition
(conj)	conjunction
(pro)	pronoun

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

advert (n)	إعلان
advertise (d) (v)	يعلن
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى
city centre shop (n)	متجر وسط المدينة
deal (n/v)	صفقة/يتعامل
delivery (n)	توصيل طلبات
discount (n)	تخفيض/خصم
email (n)	بريد إلكترونى
free (adj)	مجانًا
fresh (adj)	طازج/منعش
industry (n)	صناعة
kitchen (n)	مطبخ
leather (n)	جلد
magazine (n)	مجلة
poster (n)	ملصق إعلانى
price (n)	سعر
quality (n)	جودة
sale (n)	تخفيض/أوكازيون
shop (ped) (v/n)	يتسوق/محل
special offer	عرض خاص
store (n)	متجر
website (n)	موقع إنترنت

Electronics إلكترونيات

cassette player (n)	مشغل كاسيت
coffee machine (n)	آلة صنع القهوة
computer (n)	كمبيوتر
fridge (n)	ثلاجة
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس
kettle (n)	غلاية
laptop computer (n)	كمبيوتر محمول
microwave (n)	الميكروويف
MP3 player (n)	مشغل موسيقى
oven (n)	فرن
speakers (n)	مكبرات الصوت
television (n)	التلفاز

Lesson 2

column (n)	عمود
customer (n)	زبون
difference (n)	اختلاف
films deal	صفقة أفلام
loudly (adv)	بصوت عالٍ
shop assistant (n)	مساعد في متجر/بائع
smart (adj)	ذكي
survey (n)	دراسة/استبيان
the latest (adj)	الأحدث/آخر

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

beauty (n)	جمال
busy (adj)	مشغول
clothes (n)	ملابس
different (adj)	مختلف
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
everything (pro)	كل شيء
fashion (n)	موضة
health (n)	صحة
item (n)	عنصر/سلعة
leisure (n)	ترفيه/وقت الفراغ
machine (n)	آلة
message (n)	رسالة
normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي
popular (adj)	محبوب/شعبي
radio (n)	راديو/مذياع
special (adj)	خاص/مميز
than before	من ذي قبل
town (n)	مدينة
toy (n)	لعبة
useful (adj)	مفيد
usual price	سعر معتاد/عادي
warm (adj)	دافئ

Lesson 2

a drink (n)	مشروب
a snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
bedroom (n)	حجرة النوم
decide (d) (v)	يقرر
French (n/adj)	اللغة الفرنسية/فرنسي
How much ...?	كم ثمن ...؟
information (n)	معلومات
jeans (n)	بنطلون جينز
living room (n)	حجرة المعيشة
necklace (n)	عقد
once (adv)	مرة واحدة
shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق
tourist (n)	سائح
video game (n)	لعبة فيديو

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

make ▶	coffee يُعد قهوة	go/come ▶	shopping يذهب/يأتي للتسوق
	hot drinks يُعد مشروبات ساخنة		

Lesson 2

get ▶	a free poster يحصل على ملصق مجاني	have ▶	a discount لدية تخفيض/خصم
	the bus/train يركب أتوبيسًا/قطارًا	play ▶	music يعزف موسيقى

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

a cup of	فنجان من	for the home	للبيت
ask about	يسأل عن	on special offer	في عرض خاص
at the best prices	بأفضل الأسعار	start with	يبدأ بـ
do with	يفعل بإستخدام	wait for	ينتظر

Lesson 2

ask for	يطلب	on the Mediterranean Sea	على البحر الأبيض المتوسط
for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار	spend money on	ينفق مالاً على
from the internet	من الإنترنت	What type of ...?	ما نوع ...؟
look for	يبحث عن		

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

easy	سهل	difficult/hard	صعب	right	صحيح	wrong	خطأ
expensive	غالي الثمن	cheap	رخيص الثمن	sell	يبيع	buy	يشترى
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت	lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 2			
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
spend	ينفق/يقضى	spent	spent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 1

coffee machine (n)	آلة صنع القهوة	a machine we use to make hot drinks
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	a machine we use to keep food cold and help food stay fresh longer
kettle (n)	غلاية	a machine we use to boil water
microwave (n)	ميكروويف	a machine we use to cook things quickly
oven (n)	فرن	a machine we use to cook and heat food

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think the fridge is the most ..... machine in my kitchen. It's very important.
   a) useful b) useless c) boring d) warm
2. This laptop ..... me 5000 L.E.
   a) took b) sold c) bought d) cost
3. I like to listen to music on my ..... .
   a) microwave b) oven c) MP3 player d) kettle

Answers (a 1) (d 2) (c 3)

Language Notes

1 The present simple and present continuous

زمن المضارع البسيط وزمن المضارع المستمر

زمن المضارع البسيط يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات والحقائق الثابتة.

- I get up early every day.
- The sun goes down in the west.

زمن المضارع المستمر يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن أثناء الكلام ويستمر لفترة وينتهي.

- He is playing football now.
- I am reading a nice book.

2 where

حيث (وتعبر عن المكان)

- Visit our new **city centre shop** where we sell many different things.

3 make + مفعول + adj./inf.

يجعل

- The clown made us **laugh/happy**.

4 use + الشيء + to + inf.

يستخدم لكى

use + الشيء + for + v + ing/noun

يستخدم من أجل

- We use headphones (to **listen** / for **listening**) to music.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This is the place ..... we met last weekend.

a) when
b) which
c) where
d) that

2 His accident made us ..... very sad.

a) felt
b) to feel
c) feeling
d) feel

3 Teachers use technology ..... them teach their subjects.

a) to help
b) to helping
c) for help
d) help

Answers

١ د) ٢ d) ٣ a)

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Do you like shopping?

3. Listen to the radio advert. Tick (✓) what it is advertising. SB page 13



Voice: Do you love music? Do you want the latest technology[1]? We have the best headphones[2] now at Audioworld. We are selling them in red, which is our most popular colour, and also in black and white. This week you can buy them at the special price[3] of only 1500 Egyptian pounds. Visit our shop today!

(1) تكنولوجيا
(2) سماعات الرأس
(3) سعر

Lesson 2

2. Listen to the conversation in a shop. What type of TV does the man want? SB page 14

(1) محظوظ
(2) صفقات
(3) خصم
(4) تلفاز ذكي
(5) عرض
(6) مكبر صوت
(7) مجاني

Shop Assistant : Hello sir, can I help you?

Customer : Yes, please. I'm looking for a new TV for my living room.

Shop Assistant : OK, no problem. You're lucky[1] we have lots of deals[2] at the moment! For example, both of these TVs have a big discount[3].



Customer : Great. Are they smart TVs[4]?

Shop Assistant : No, sorry. Neither of these is a smart TV, but this one over here is and that is also on special offer[5].

Customer : Hmm, that one is a bit smaller than what I want. I want quite a big one. How much is this bigger one?

Shop Assistant : Oh yes, that's a great TV. That's new in the shop this week so it doesn't have a discount. It is 8,000 pounds.

Customer : That's a bit expensive for me. Is that your best price?

Shop Assistant : Yes, sorry, but I am offering a deal today. You can get either a free speaker[6] or get a free[7] films deal with that one.

Customer : Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker. I think this one will look great in my living room. I'll take it!

Post-listening question: - How much is the bigger TV?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This microwave has a 25% ..... . Usually it costs 1,000 L.E. but now it is 750 L.E.
a) advert b) offer c) sale d) discount

2 I'll turn the ..... on and make us some tea.
a) oven b) toaster c) poster d) kettle

3 Put the fish in the ..... and it'll only take 5 minutes to be ready for lunch.
a) magazine b) kettle c) microwave d) toaster

4 The most useful thing in the kitchen is the ..... .
a) speakers b) smart TV c) fridge d) magazine

5 I searched a few ..... and found the information I was looking for online.
a) messages b) posters c) websites d) books

6 I put a/an ..... in the local newspaper for selling my car.
a) email b) advert c) review d) message

7 The hotel has a special ..... of five nights for the price of three.
a) offer b) event c) advert d) delivery

8 I made a great ..... when I bought this fantastic car from him.
a) poster b) sale c) deal d) advert

9 On this ..... phone, you can do what you do on your computer.
a) ugly b) smart c) silly d) horrible

10 Would you like to have a ..... with me after work at the café? They serve good coffee.
a) drink b) snack c) discount d) deal

11 The ..... showed that 32% of people prefer online shopping.
a) oven b) advert c) poster d) survey

12 Yesterday, I went to bed at my ..... time. I didn't sleep late.
a) leisure b) usual c) free d) busy

13 You're ..... . We have lots of deals at the moment.
a) unlucky b) unhappy c) lucky d) silly

14 The manager is out, can I take a .....?
a) passenger b) passage c) message d) massage

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All airports in the country are working ..... today. There is nothing to worry about.
   a) unusually b) normally c) badly d) abnormally
2. The clothes shop has a ..... . All the clothes are cheaper than usual this week!
   a) sale b) sail c) deal d) message WB
3. I have bought some ..... for my phone, so I can play my music more loudly!
   a) kettles b) speakers c) computers d) toasters WB
4. That shop is full of ..... because it has a big sale.
   a) customers b) sellers c) workers d) posters
5. If there's a restaurant nearby, we could stop for a ..... . I'm quite hungry.
   a) drink b) snack c) discount d) deal
6. I'm saving these symbols to ..... a free poster.
   a) make b) get c) do d) sell
7. I go swimming ..... a week. I only go on Fridays.
   a) three times b) double c) twice d) once
8. This store sells goods ..... the best prices.
   a) at b) on c) for d) in
9. The cotton T-shirt is currently ..... a special offer at 150 L.E.
   a) by b) at c) for d) on
10. This fruit ..... 10 pounds a kilo.
    a) costs b) pays c) buys d) spends
11. Osama's family have a ..... TV. They can now watch films from the internet.
    a) smart b) dark c) stupid d) small WB
12. That store has a discount on most goods, especially ..... such as the coffee machine.
    a) electronics b) engines c) motors d) magazines
13. I need to ..... some shopping on my way home from work.
    a) do b) go c) make d) have

(B) Language

1 Comparing adjectives: مقارنة الصفات:

A) Comparative:

صيغة التفضيل (المقارنة بين اثنين):

short adj. صفة قصيرة/ adv. ظرف + er + than

- My house is **large**r than hers.
- I go to work early, but Soliman goes **earl**ier than me.

more أكثر/less أقل + long adj. صفة طويلة / adv. (ly) ظرف + than

- The second lesson was more **interesting** than the first.
- You speak more **loudly** than a loudspeaker.

- عند السؤال نستخدم (Which)

Which is + (adj. + er)/(more/less + adj.) ...?

- Which is longer, the River Nile or the River Thames?
- Which is more useful, the mobile or the computer?

B) Superlative:

صيغة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين/مجموعة):

the + short adj./ adv. + est

- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- He arrived the earliest, so he had to wait for the others.

the most/least + long adj./adv. (ly).

- This is the least **expensive** jacket in the store.
- Of all the girls, your sister sang the most **sweetly**.

Irregular adjectives/ adverbs

ولكن هناك صفات أو ظروف غير منتظمة:

Adj./Adv. الصفة/الظرف	Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين	Superlative المقارنة بين مجموعة
good/well جيد/بشكل جيد	better (than) أفضل/أحسن (من)	the best الأفضل/الأحسن
bad/badly سيئ/بشكل سيئ	worse (than) أسوء (من)	the worst الأسوء
far بعيد	further/farther (than) أبعد (من)	the furthest/farthest الأبعد
little قليل (للكمية)	less (than) أقل (من)	the least الأقل
much/many كثير	more (than) أكثر (من)	the most الأكثر

- Today is the worst day I've had in all my life.
- You play tennis better than I do.
- I ran pretty far yesterday, but I ran even farther today.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. His car is certainly better, because it's ..... (much modern) than mine.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (more modern) لأنها مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة modern طويلة.

2. ..... (busy) shop in my town is the supermarket.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (The busiest) لأنها صيغة تفضيل عليا والصفة (busy قصيرة).

2 both/ either/ neither

- تستخدم هذه المحددات للإشارة إلى شخصين أو شيئين فقط.

(A) both ... and

- Use both .... (and) ... to mean this thing or another thing.

نستخدم (كلًا من ... و ...) لتعنى هذا الشيء أو شيء آخر.

both + 1 فاعل + and + 2 فاعل + فعل جمع دائمًا

- Both Nessma and I **like** shopping at the market.

both (of) + اسم جمع + فعل جمع دائمًا

- Both (of) the sisters are good at maths.

فاعل جمع + both + فعل جمع دائمًا

- **My parents** both **work** in the same building. Both of them work hard.

Extra Examples: أمثلة إضافية:

- **A:** Do you want the blue shirt or the red one?
  B: I'll buy both. They are beautiful.
- I had a long, hard day and I'm both tired and hungry.
- Eman speaks both English and Arabic.
- She speaks both **languages**.

(B) either ... or

Use either ... (or) ... to mean this thing or another thing.

تستخدم إما ... (أو) ... لتعنى (هذا الشىء أو شىء آخر) أى واحد فقط من الاثنين.

either + 1 فاعل + or + 2 فاعل + فقط 2 فعل يتبع فاعل

- Either Ali's sisters or Ali is ready now. = Either Ali or his sisters are ready now.
- Either you or Mona has to finish the report before 5 pm.

either + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد

- **A:** Do you want the new jacket ready on Thursday or Friday?
  B: Either day is fine for me.
- There are two films and I'm not interested in either film.

either of + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + فعل مفرد

- Either of these shirts is good. = Either of them is good.
- **A:** Which photo do you prefer? **B:** I don't like either of them.
- I don't want either of those apples.

(C) neither ... nor

Use neither ... (nor) ... to mean not this thing or another thing.

تستخدم لا ... (ولا) ... لتعنى (ليس هذا الشىء أو شىء آخر) أى لا أحد من الاثنين فهى تنفى الاثنين معًا ولا يأتى معها نفى.

neither + 1 فاعل + nor + 2 فاعل + فقط 2 فعل يتبع فاعل

- Neither Nawal nor Nader **likes** washing the dishes.
- Neither Ali nor his parents **are** tall.

neither + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد

- Neither parent **knows** about the accident.

neither of + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + فعل مفرد

- Neither of our cars **has** enough petrol so we have to take the bus.
- Neither of those necklaces **is** cheap.
- The present is for neither of us.

لاحظ أن:

neither = نفى + either

- I **have** neither time nor money. = I **don't have** either time or money.

(D) none / all (of)

Use none to mean no one or no item.

- استخدام none (لا أحد من الكل).

none of + كمية لا تعد + فعل مفرد

- None of the **snow** has melted.

none of + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + فعل مفرد

- None of **us** wants to buy these phones.
- None of **my friends** goes shopping every day.

all (of) + اسم جمع + فعل جمع

- All plants need water. = All (of) the plants in the garden were burned.

all (of) + اسم كمية لا يُعد + فعل مفرد

- All of the food was eaten.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can ..... (both) you or Lisa take me to the station?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (either) لوجود كلمة or.

2. Both John ..... (nor) Sara were invited.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (and) لوجود كلمة Both.

3. The match was really boring. ..... (Either) team played well.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Neither) لأنها تدل على النفى.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My new bike is ..... (fast) than yours.
2. ..... (Neither) Ali or Samy goes swimming on Fridays.
3. This machine is neither useful ..... (or) cheap.

Answers

1 faster 2 Either 3 nor

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is ..... to shop online now than before. SB
a) easy b) easier c) the easiest d) easily

2 What is ..... film you saw?
a) funny b) funnier c) the funniest d) the funny

3 That play was bad, but it wasn't ..... I have ever seen.
a) bad b) worse than c) worse d) the worst

4 Who is ..... person in your country?
a) more powerful b) most powerful
c) more powerful than d) the most powerful

5 The two dresses are old fashioned. She didn't like ..... of them.
a) either b) neither c) no d) none

6 ..... of these necklaces are nice. I can't decide which one to buy! SB
a) Both b) None c) Either d) Neither

7 Neither my father ..... my mother knows about my exam result.
a) nor b) neither c) or d) and

8 **A:** Did you eat the sandwich or the pizza? **B:** I ate ..... I was really hungry.
a) either b) none c) neither d) both

9 We've got two children, but ..... them lives with us any longer.
a) neither of b) neither c) either of d) either

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Televisions are ..... (expensive) than kettles.
2 Both of the phones ..... (has) lots of apps. SB
3 You can't wear ..... (neither) of those dresses. They don't fit you.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Health is more important than wealth. (Wealth)
.....

2 I've got neither time nor money to go on holiday. (either)
.....

3 My father is the oldest person in my family. (older)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Yesterday's exam was ..... than the one last month.
a) difficult b) much difficult c) the difficult d) more difficult

2 ..... Dareen nor Malak speaks French, so they didn't understand the tourists. WB
a) Neither b) Either c) Both d) None

3 I think Basmala is the ..... girl of all her friends.
a) beautiful b) most beautiful c) more beautiful d) much beautiful

4 Her room is only a bit ..... than mine.
a) bigger b) the bigger c) big d) the biggest

5 I'm sorry, but I couldn't get through to ..... of them.
a) none b) neither c) either d) no

6 **A:** Did you buy the tablet or the laptop?
B: I bought ..... of them. They are too expensive.
a) either b) none c) neither d) both

7 You can take ..... the 38 bus or the 341 bus to get to town.
a) both b) either c) all d) neither

8 I bought several types of batteries, but ..... of them is the right kind.
a) all b) both c) either d) none

9 My school is ..... than my father's office.
a) far b) further c) the farther d) the further

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 This house is high than the Television Tower. (.....)
2 Neither them could take me to the station, so I had to take a taxi. (.....)
3 My sister and I neither like playing tennis. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 You aren't as funny as a clown. (A clown)
.....

2 You can choose one of those two presents. (either)
.....

3 My dog is the cleverest dog of all. (No dog)
.....

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Buying something in a shop شراء شىء من محل

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

- Can I help you?
- How can I help you?

هل يمكننى مساعدتك؟
كيف يمكننى مساعدتك؟

- I'm looking for a new TV.
- I would like to buy a new TV.

أنا أبحث عن تلفاز جديد.
أود أن أشترى تلفازًا جديدًا.

OK, no problem. Both of these TVs have a big discount.
حسنا، لا توجد مشكلة. كلٌ من هذين التلفازين عليهما خصم كبير.

Are they smart TVs?
هل هى تلفازات ذكية؟

No, sorry. Neither of these is a smart TV.
لا للأسف، لا تلفاز منهم ذكى.

That one is a bit small. How much is the bigger one?
هذا التلفاز صغير قليلًا، كم ثمن التلفاز الأكبر؟

It's 8000 pounds.
إنه بثمانية آلاف جنيه.

That's a bit expensive to me. Is that your best price?
إنه غالى قليلا بالنسبة لى. هل هذا هو أفضل سعر؟

Yes, sorry. But I'm offering a deal today. You can get either a speaker or a free films deal with that one.
نعم للأسف. ولكنى أعرض صفقة اليوم. يمكنك الحصول على مكبر صوت أو صفقة أفلام مجانية مع هذا التلفاز.

Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker.
حسنا، هذا عظيم لأننى أحتاج إلى مكبر صوت جديد.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dalia is buying a speaker.

Salesperson: Can I help you?
Dalia : Yes, (1)..... .
Salesperson: (2).....?
Dalia : Sorry no, there aren't smart speakers.
Salesperson: Let's see ... here's a nice small black one. Is the size OK?
Dalia : No, (3)..... .
Salesperson: OK ... (4).....?
Dalia : OK ... yes, I love it. (5).....?
Salesperson: It's L.E. 300. It will be L.E. 250, with a discount.
Dalia : Perfect! I'll take it.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You want to buy an oven.
.....
2. You ask the assistant about the price of a smart speaker.
.....
3. You ask the shopkeeper if they have got a bigger smart TV.
.....
4. You are an assistant and a customer got in the shop.
.....
5. The shop assistant wants to know the size of the TV you want.
.....
6. You were asked about the item you want.
.....



Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara wants to buy a new blouse.

Shop assistant : Can I help you?

Sara : Yes, I'm looking for a blouse.

Shop assistant : (1)..... ?

Sara : Large, please.

Shop assistant : (2)..... ?

Sara : I'd like blue, please.

Shop assistant : (3)..... ?

Sara : Yes, that's nice. How much is it?

Shop assistant : (4)..... .

Sara : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You're an assistant in a shop. Ask the customer what he needs.

.....

2. You want to buy a new coffee machine.

.....

3. You are in a shop. You want to know if there are smart TVs.

.....

4. You're buying a tablet, ask about its price.

.....

5. You want to know if you could see a bigger fridge.

.....

6. The shopkeeper asks you about the size you want.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about shopping
كيفية الكتابة عن التسوق

- I go shopping ..... .
- I like buying clothes and ..... .
- I sometimes shop online.
- I often buy things on special offer because ..... .
- I like shopping at the market and ..... .
- I spend much money on shopping.
- I don't spend much money on snacks.

Writing tips

After you finish writing, reread and revise your writing. Don't forget that good grammar and punctuation counts.

بعد الانتهاء من كتابة الفقرة، اقرأ فقرتك لمراجعتها ولا تنس أن الالتزام بالقواعد النحوية وعلامات الترقيم يضيف لفقرتك.

Example

"Shopping"

Shops are necessary places, where people go to buy their necessary things. Shopping is something which is loved by all of us. It is said that many people find shopping relaxing. I too believe that shopping is a relaxing thing as whenever I get too stressed. I often go for shopping. I like to go to big stores where there are special offers. The most difficult part about shopping for me is choosing things. There are always large crowds of people at the shops.

These days there is a new concept of shopping called online shopping. I love to shop online because online shopping offers many advantages over traditional shopping. First, some online stores have amazing collections for every age group. Secondly, we can buy anything online without going to crowded marketplaces. Thirdly, it always has a discount. It is very interesting to me.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

Online shopping

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is at a supermarket to buy some fruits and vegetables.

Sama: I'm looking for some fresh fruits.
Seller: Well, we just got in some mangoes.
Sama: Great! (1)..... on sale?
Seller: Yes, they are. They have 20 % discount.
Sama: (2).....?
Seller: Well, the sale price is (3)..... .
Sama: Have you got fresh vegetables?
Seller: (4)..... .
Sama: (5).....?
Seller: They are on the second shelf over there.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask the shop assistant about the price of a brown pair of shoes.
.....

2 You need to buy a headphone the seller asks you about the colour you want.
.....

3 The assistant asks if he/she can help.
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There is a good ..... at the café today. You get a free drink when you buy a sandwich.
a) discount b) sale c) deal d) tool

2 I refused to wear ..... because they can hurt my ears badly.
a) headphones b) speakers c) posters d) emails

3 There's some mango juice in the ..... . Please, bring it.
a) kettle b) toaster c) fridge d) oven

4 They asked me to design a ..... for our project.
a) toaster b) poster c) fridge d) message

5 I'll just make some ..... coffee.
a) fresh b) busy c) free d) bad

WB

6 This store offers free ..... to your home when you order anything.
a) website b) delivery c) poster d) magazine

7 We should ..... for someone to look after our children.
a) sell b) buy c) advertise d) inform

8 He is ..... one when he is playing football.
a) the happier b) happiest c) happy d) the happiest

9 You can ..... get the bus or the train to the shopping centre. SB
a) both b) either c) neither d) all

10 ..... Fares nor Imad can come to the beach. SB
a) Neither b) None c) Either d) All

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 This is the ..... (good) juice I have ever drunk.
2 ..... (Both) of the answers is correct. Try again.
3 ..... (Either) Alexandria and Port Said are on the Mediterranean Sea. WB

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I'm the youngest of the family. (younger)
.....

2 No girl in our school is more beautiful than my sister. (My sister)
.....

3 He showed us two flats, but we didn't like any of them. (both)
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Some items that you have in your kitchen." WB

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB Pages 16 - 18
WB Pages 81 & 82

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

battery (n)	بطارية
charge (d) (v)	يشحن
form (n)	استمارة
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
instructions (n)	تعليمات
moment (n)	لحظة
password (n)	كلمة السر/المرور
town centre (n)	وسط المدينة

Phrasal Verbs الأفعال المركبة

fill (ed) in	يملأ استمارة
log (ged) in	يسجل الدخول
plug (ged) in	يقوم بتوصيل جهاز
turn (ed) off	يغلق جهازًا
turn (ed) on	يفتح جهازًا

Lesson 4

artist (n)	فنان
carpet (n)	سجادة
coast (n)	ساحل
colourful (adj)	ملون/زاهى الألوان
decorate (d) (v)	يزين/يزخرف
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم
handicraft (n)	حرفى/حرفة يدوية
paint (ed) (v)	يدهن/يلون
quality (n)	جودة
shell (n)	صدفة/قوقعة
style (n)	أسلوب
traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

after that	بعد ذلك
again (adv)	مرة أخرى
anyone (pro)	أى شخص
exciting (adj)	مثير/مبهج/شيق
laptop (n)	حاسوب محمول
nobody (pro)	لا أحد
anything (pro)	أى شىء
drop (ped) (v)	يُسقط
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

Lesson 4

area (n)	منطقة	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
basket (n)	سلة	modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى
call (ed) (v)	يتصل بـ	objects (n)	أشياء
Egyptian (adj)	مصرى	plan (ned) (v/n)	يخطط/خطة
How big ...?	كم حجم ...؟	pot (n)	وعاء/قِدر
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	statue (n)	تمثال

Materials مواد خام

glass (n)	زجاج	stone (n)	حجر
leather (n)	جلد (مُصنع)	wood (n)	خشب
metal (n)	معدن	wooden (adj)	خشبى
plastic (n)	بلاستيك	wool (n)	صوف

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

charge ▶ a battery	يشحن بطارية	log in with ▶ information	يسجل الدخول باستخدام معلومات
fill in a form/ information	يملأ استمارة / بيانات	lose ▶ my work	أفقد عملى
follow ▶ a rule	يتبع قاعدة	use ▶ a password	يستخدم كلمة مرور
get ▶ a new password	يحصل على كلمة مرور جديدة	use ▶ information	يستخدم معلومات
get ▶ information	يحصل على معلومات	walk down/along ▶ the road	يسير فى الطريق
come in ▶ many colours	يأتى بألوان كثيرة	look ▶ amazing	يبدو مذهلًا
earn ▶ money	يكسب مالًا	write ▶ a reply	يكتب ردًا

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

around a corner	حول الناصية	talk to/about	يتكلم إلى/عن
congratulations on	تهانينا على	tell about	يخبر عن
problem with	مشكلة فى	think of/about	يفكر/يعتقد فى

Lesson 4

advert for	إعلان لـ	popular with	محبوب لدى
decorate with	يزين/يزخرف بـ	type of	نوع من
famous for	مشهور بـ	with traditional Arabic designs	بتصميمات عربية تقليدية
find out about	يكتشف عن	work for	يعمل لدى
in traditional designs	بتصاميم تقليدية		

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

wrong	خطأ	right	صواب	finish (ed)	ينهى	start (ed)	يبدأ

Lesson 4

beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح	soft	لين/طرى/ناعم	hard	صلب

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
break	يكسر	broke	broken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
lose	يفقد/يضيع/يخسر	lost	lost
show	يعرض	showed	shown
Lesson 4			
say	يقول	said	said
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Mohamed Farouk works hard to ..... a lot of money.
   a) earn b) win c) sell d) buy
2. Laptops and tablets are examples of ..... .
   a) food b) sports c) technology d) materials
3. What is Egypt famous .....?
   a) at b) for c) on d) by

Answers 1 a) 2 c) 3 b)

Lesson 4

advert for	إعلان لـ	popular with	محبوب لدى
decorate with	يزين/يزخرف بـ	type of	نوع من
famous for	مشهور بـ	with traditional Arabic designs	بتصميمات عربية تقليدية
find out about	يكتشف عن	work for	يعمل لدى
in traditional designs	بتصاميم تقليدية		

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

wrong	خطأ	right	صواب	finish (ed)	ينهى	start (ed)	يبدأ

Lesson 4

beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح	soft	لين/طرى/ناعم	hard	صلب

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
break	يكسر	broke	broken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
lose	يفقد/يضيع/يخسر	lost	lost
show	يعرض	showed	shown
Lesson 4			
say	يقول	said	said
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Mohamed Farouk works hard to ..... a lot of money.
   a) earn b) win c) sell d) buy
2. Laptops and tablets are examples of ..... .
   a) food b) sports c) technology d) materials
3. What is Egypt famous .....?
   a) at b) for c) on d) by

Answers ١) a ٢) c ٣) b

Language Notes

Adjective order: ترتيب الصفات:

1. Opinion (رأى (شخصى / Size حجم / Shape شكل / Age عمر / Colour لون / Nationality جنسية / Material مادة / Noun اسم
   - It's a beautiful brown orange **necklace**.
   - I bought a really cool new **phone**!

2. **fall (fell - fallen)** (يقعها لا يأتى معها مفعول
   - يتم استخدامها للإشارة إلى شيء ما (لم يكن بيد شخص) أو شخص ما سقط على الأرض ولكن بشكل عام هذا اجراء لم يتم القيام به عن قصد.
   - The book fell off the desk.
   - The prince has again fallen from his horse.

3. **start + (v + ing) / (to + inf.)** يبدأ / **finish + (v + ing)** ينهى/ينتهى
   - I started **to study (studying)** hard.
   - Why should you turn off computers when you finish **using** them?

4. **____ one / ____ body** تأخذ فعلاً مفردًا بعدها ونعوض عنها بضمير جمع
   - Everyone **is** preparing their bags. They are ready.

5. **one of +** صيغة تفضيل عليا **/ one of +** اسم جمع **+** فعل مفرد واحد من
   - The leather industry is one of **the oldest** in Egypt.
   - One of my **friends** lives in Tanta.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think someone ..... in the kitchen. I hear a sound from there.
   a) were b) was c) are d) is
2. My brother threw the mobile and it ..... to the ground into pieces.
   a) fell b) dropped c) felt d) felled
3. One of my school windows ..... broken last week.
   a) is b) was c) were d) are

Answers (1 p) (2 e) (3 b)

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What's the difference between a computer and a laptop?

1. *Read the conversation below. Who is Aya talking to? What are they talking about?*

SB page 16

Hello. How can I help you, Aya?

Hi. I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, it suddenly turned off(1). Now I can't log in(2) and I think I lost my work!

Was the computer plugged in(3)?

Yes, it was plugged in. I was charging(4) the battery(5).

Did you turn on(6) the computer again?

Yes, but then it said my password(7) to log in was wrong.

One moment please … I just emailed you a form to fill in(8) to get a new password. Log in again with that information. I hope that works!

OK, thank you.

(1) يغلق
(2) يسجل الدخول
(3) متصل بالكهرباء
(4) يشحن
(5) البطارية
(6) يشغل
(7) كلمة المرور
(8) يكمل بيانات



Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. Aya finished her homework yesterday. ( )
2. The computer doesn't charge. ( )
3. Aya can turn the computer on. ( )

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Is it easy to use a laptop?

2. Complete the instructions with these words. WB page 81

Congratulations on buying a new computer! Here are the instructions for how to use it:

1. First, **plug in** the computer. To **charge** the battery, leave it for three or four hours.
2. Now **turn** on the computer.
3. When the computer is ready, it will ask you to **fill in** some information.
4. Write your name and choose a **password** that nobody can guess.
5. Now you can **log in** to your computer and start using it.
6. Don't forget to turn **off** your computer when you are not using it.

Lesson 4

Reading Text

3. Read about handicrafts in Egypt. Are the sentences below true (T) or false (F)? WB page 82

Correct the false sentences.



The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts. People who live here sell carpets, baskets and colourful pots. Some women in a village near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the leaves of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood and leather. These handicrafts are very popular with tourists, and help the Egyptians to earn money.

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. You can buy beautiful handicrafts in the south of Egypt. ( )
2. Women in a village near Aswan always make handicrafts from leather. ( )
3. Tourists like Egyptian handicrafts. ( )

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What do you think of Egyptian handicrafts?

2. *Read the advert for some traditional Egyptian handicrafts. Which one do you like the best?*

SB page 18

Egyptian Handicrafts(1)

The best quality and prices!

These beautiful wooden(2) boxes can be used for jewellery(3). They are decorated(4) with shells(5) in traditional designs(6). They are made by artists near the coast.



The leather industry(7) is one of the oldest in Egypt and our bags are the best quality(8). The leather is very soft(9).



We sell many different types of pots(10) in different colours for your home. The artists paint the pots with traditional Arabic designs.



Egypt has a long history of making beautiful carpets(11). These colourful(12), modern carpets will look amazing in any home.



Call or email us to find out about special offers.

(1) حرف يدوية
(2) خشبى
(3) مجوهرات
(4) مزينة/مزخرفة
(5) صدف
(6) تصميمات تقليدية
(7) صناعة الجلود
(8) جودة
(9) طرى/ناعم
(10) أوانى
(11) سجاد
(12) زاهى الألوان

Post-reading questions:
1. Which Egyptian handicrafts does the advert say are very old?
2. Which item comes in many colours?
3. Which items use a traditional style?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Could you ..... in the electric kettle, please? I want to boil some water.
a) turn b) plug c) log d) charge

2 Never tell anyone your ..... .
a) crossroad b) passport c) crossword d) password

3 When you ..... the form, please give it to the secretary.
a) turn off b) log in c) fill in d) fill with

4 The laptop doesn't start. Then it needs three hours to ..... the battery.
a) charge b) sell c) log d) plug

5 Don't forget to turn ..... your computer when you are not using it.
a) on b) off c) of d) in

6 Students should follow their school ..... .
a) roles b) rulers c) rolls d) rules

7 My sister doesn't like to wear ..... clothes. She prefers modern ones.
a) attractive b) new c) traditional d) colourful

8 This letter is written in a formal ..... .
a) paper b) type c) quality d) style

9 She is really a fine ..... . She made many pots in different designs.
a) engineer b) artist c) architect d) musician

10 A ..... would be really useful when I work on the train.
a) laptop b) kettle c) computer d) toaster

11 The sky is ..... covered with dark clouds. We don't expect that.
a) locally b) especially c) normally d) suddenly

12 She was wearing neither ..... nor make-up.
a) quality b) industry c) jewellery d) technology

13 In her hurry, she ..... the mobile, but fortunately, it wasn't broken.
a) fell b) dropped c) flew d) drove

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 How long do you ..... to stay here?
a) plug b) turn c) plan d) log

2 The computer ..... has increased greatly over the last century.
a) material b) leather c) wool d) industry

3 There's an old ..... desk in front of the window.
a) wooden b) woolen c) golden d) widen

4 Most of the statues are made of ..... .
a) leather b) wool c) stone d) glass

5 He is worried about ..... his work.
a) saving b) making c) missing d) losing

6 He works hard to ..... enough money for his family.
a) earn b) win c) lose d) miss

7 We would like to offer our congratulations ..... your cool new car.
a) on b) at c) to d) for

8 The skin of babies is really ..... .
a) soft b) hard c) ugly d) rough

9 He is interested ..... planting flowers in the garden.
a) at b) on c) with d) in

10 When the red light comes on, you should recharge the ..... to be ready for the next time.
a) energy b) poster c) battery d) form

11 You should read the ..... before you start this machine.
a) posters b) presentations
c) forms d) instructions

12 Do you want to take some local products and .....?
a) necklaces b) handicrafts c) headphones d) earrings

13 It's a great deal. The product is of high ..... and is not expensive either.
a) quarter b) quietness
c) quantity d) quality

(B) Language

The past tenses ازمنة الماضى

1 The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Active: المبنى للمعلوم:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل (ed,d,ied/فعل غير منتظم)

- She washed the dishes.
- I ate my lunch an hour ago.

Passive: المبنى للمجهول:

Object (المفعول) + was/were + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

- The computer was plugged in.
- The dishes were washed.

Subject + didn't + الفعل فى المصدر

- They **didn't play** video games yesterday.
- Nabil **didn't come** late.

yesterday أمس, وقت + **ago** ... منذ, **in** 1970, **last** + الماضى ... وقت /

in the past فى الماضى

١- حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

1. I met my friend yesterday.

٢- سرد أحداث متعاقبة فى الماضى.

2. He opened the door, switched on the light and fed his cat.

٣- عادة فى الماضى.

3. I always played basketball when I was young.

Yes/No questions

Did + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- Did you go to the seaside last summer?

Wh- questions

Q. word + did + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- **A:** How did he go to the park? **B:** He went to the park by bus.

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Last year, I ..... (visit) Paris and Rome.

- الاجابة الصحيحة (visited) لوجود last year الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط.

2 The past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Form التكوين

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد	was + v + ing
You, We, They, اسم جمع	were + v + ing

- He **was doing** his homework.
- The children **were eating**.

Negative النفى

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد	wasn't + v + ing
You , We, They, اسم جمع	weren't + v + ing

- I **wasn't** sleeping.
- You **weren't** studying.

Key words الكلمات المساعدة

at 6 o'clock yesterday, from 3 to 6 on Monday, when, while, all day yesterday

Usage الاستخدام

١- شىء حدث فى وقت محدد تماما فى الماضى.

1. We **were** playing football **yesterday evening**.

٢- حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر فى الماضى. (وهنا نستخدم الماضى البسيط معه).

2. **While** I **was** sleeping, my uncle **visited** us.

٣- شيئان حدثا فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى.

3. She **was** cooking dinner and her kids **were** watching TV.

Yes/No questions

Question السؤال

Was + (I, he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + (**v + ing**)?
Were + (you, we, they, اسم جمع) + (**v + ing**)?

- **Was** he **reading** at 12 am last night?
- **Were** they **eating** dinner at 8 yesterday?

Wh- questions

Q. word + **was** + (I, he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + (**v + ing**)?
Q. word + **were** + (you, we, they, اسم جمع) + (**v + ing**)?

- **A:** What **were** you **doing** at 6 o'clock yesterday?
  B: We **were** watching TV.

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- At 7 pm yesterday, we ..... (listened) to music.

الدالة على زمن الماضى at 7 pm yesterday لوجود (were listening) - الإجابة الصحيحة
المستمر لأنها وقت محدد فى الماضى.

When & While

تذكر هذه الروابط عند تقاطع حدثين فى الماضى:

When + ماضى مستمر , ماضى بسيط

ماضى بسيط **+ when +** ماضى مستمر

- When I **phoned** my friends, they **were playing** the piano.

While/As + ماضى بسيط , ماضى مستمر

ماضى مستمر **+ while/as +** ماضى بسيط

- While/As he **was taking** a shower, his dogs **ate** his steaks.

لاحظ أن: يمكن أن تأتى When:

١- بنفس قاعدة while كالآتى: **When +** ماضى بسيط , ماضى مستمر

وتعنى خلال وقت حدوث شىء ما.

- When I **was doing** my homework, someone **knocked** at the door.

٢- عند ترتيب حدثين متتابعين (قصيرى المدى) نضع الجملتين بعد when فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

When + ماضى بسيط , ماضى بسيط

- I **lost** some homework when my computer **broke**!

3. While + v-ing ....

- While **going** home, I **met** my old friend Rami.

للتعبير عن حدثين مستمرين فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى

4. **While/As +** ماضى مستمر , ماضى مستمر

- While/As Mum **was cooking**, I **was** cleaning the house.

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

-While John was playing the guitar, Linda ..... (come) in.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (came) لأن الجملة التى تتبع while تأتى فى زمن الماضى المستمر أما الجملة الأخرى فتأتى فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What were you doing when I ..... (phone) you?
2. While we ..... (was) eating, the phone rang.
3. Samy was driving home ..... (as) he saw a terrible accident.

Answers

1 phoned 2 were 3 when

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phone ..... ! My friend felt very bad and I was sad.
a) break b) breaks c) broke d) was broking

2 When you arrived at the party, who ..... there?
a) was doing b) did c) was d) was being

3 I ..... a terrible dream last night.
a) was having b) am having c) had d) have

4 While we were walking along the road, we ..... a robber!
a) see b) were seeing c) saw d) seen

5 She left angrily ..... he was speaking.
a) after b) before c) so d) while

6 Was he ..... his homework when his mother arrived?
a) doing b) does c) done d) did

7 ..... lunch at 4 pm yesterday?
a) Will he have b) Has he had
c) Does he have d) Was he having

8 At 8.30 am today, I ..... to work.
a) drive b) was driven c) was driving d) drove

9 While ..... in Canada, we went skiing almost every day.
a) were being b) were c) being d) are being

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 About four years ago, I ..... (decide) to become a musician.
2 They ..... (walk) home when I last saw them.
3 My uncle called me ..... (when) I was buying some food.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 They were playing tennis when we got there.
..... (While)

2 We started playing football and suddenly it started to rain.
..... (As)

3 I heard a strange noise while watching a horror movie.
..... (when)

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My brother and sister ..... skiing in the mountains at 11 am yesterday.
a) are b) was c) were d) have

2 Many years ago, people ..... on horseback.
a) were travelled b) were travelling c) was travelling d) travelled

3 I ..... out of the window when the accident happened.
a) was looked b) looked c) look d) was looking

4 Yesterday at 7 o'clock, Abdullah ..... a movie.
a) watched b) watch c) watches d) was watching

5 We ..... in New York last year.
a) were b) would be c) are d) was

6 As I ..... my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it. SB
a) give b) was giving c) gave d) were giving

7 He ..... his grandmother yesterday.
a) was visiting b) visits c) visit d) visited

8 I was reading a detective story ..... I heard a noise.
a) during b) while c) when d) if

9 They ..... coffee every day when they were in France.
a) drank b) drink c) were drinking d) are drinking

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 While I sleep, my sister played the piano loudly. (.....)
2 When I was younger, I eat pizza almost every day. (.....)
3 At half past nine yesterday, she do her homework. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 My son hurt his knee badly when he was riding his bicycle yesterday. (as)
.....
2 While the scientist was working in his laboratory, a friend came to see him. (When)
.....
3 While walking home, Mazin met his old friends. (when)
.....

(C) Skills

Write it right

How to write an email about buying some items from Egyptian handicrafts to sell

كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى عن شراء بعض الأصناف من الأشغال اليدوية المصرية لبيعها

- Plan your email, begin with Dear.
- What are the handicrafts you want to buy?
- What do they look like?
- What are they made of?
- How much are they?
- How long does delivery usually take?
- How much does delivery cost?
- Do you have any special offers?
- What colours/sizes do you have?
- Why do people want to buy them?

Writing tips

Make use of strong verbs: It will make your sentence sound more appropriate.

الاستفادة من الأفعال القوية: سيجعل جملتك أكثر ملاءمة

Example

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am interested in buying some of your handicrafts to sell in my shop. I want something more attractive. They can be carpets, baskets and colourful pots. It can be made from wood, leather or wool. They can be decorated with colourful things. I want them to be traditional and also modern. They should be popular with tourists to help me earn more money. Can you tell me how much they are? How long does delivery take? I wonder if you have any special offers. Please tell me how big they are. Also, I want to know their colours and sizes. I hope I'll make a good deal with you. I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours faithfully,

Yasser.

Check Point: Write an email of 110 words to your friend Sam to tell him about Egyptian handicrafts. Your name is Adam. Your email address is adam@yahoo.com, your friend's email address is sam@worldmail.com.

Lessons 3&4 General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My mother likes to ..... our rooms with colourful wallpaper.
a) design b) create c) dry d) decorate

2 Please ..... the alarm clock. I want to sleep again.
a) turn off b) turn on c) plug in d) charge

3 When the computer is ready, it will ask you to ..... some information. WB
a) turn on b) plug in c) log in d) fill in

4 Can you ..... the height of the tree?
a) guess b) produce c) find d) count

5 The curtains and the ..... of my room match perfectly.
a) forms b) carpets c) shells d) emails

6 Children like to collect ..... on the beach.
a) diagrams b) magazines
c) posters d) shells

7 I have a little problem ..... my car, but I'm going to repair it.
a) to b) with c) of d) about

8 ..... you still working at 7pm last night?
a) Were b) Are c) Was d) Do

9 I ..... to the park last Sunday.
a) go b) was going
c) went d) am going

10 I was talking to my friend while my sister ..... to our parents.
a) talks b) was talked
c) talked d) was talking

2 Fill in the gaps:

We decided to spend the weekend at the park. We (1)..... there early in the morning before it became hot. When we arrived there, we (2)..... find many people. After two hours, there were many people. While we (3)..... on the grass, it became cloudy and started to rain. My sisters (4)..... very sad. We decided to go home before it became worse.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He ..... (meet) his uncle when he was living in London.

2 It ..... (rain) the whole day, so we decided to stay at home.

3 I was watching TV ..... (as) she called me.

4 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I was shopping in London when I first met my wife. (As)

.....

2 I was sleeping when the alarm rang. (While)

.....

3 I played football yesterday. (yesterday evening)

.....

5 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Nader about handicrafts that you can buy in your area. Your name is Hossam and your email address is hossam@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is nader@gmail.com.

WB

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB Pages 19 - 21
WB Pages 83 - 85

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

company (n)	شركة	negative (adj)	سلبي
complain (ed) (v)	يشكو/يشتكى	order (ed) (v/n)	يطلب/طلب
complaint (n)	شكوى	order form (n)	نموذج الطلب
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	positive (adj)	إيجابي

Complaint الشكوى

Items العناصر		Types of complaint أنواع الشكوى	
leather bag (n)	حقيبة جلد	broken	مكسور
microwave (n)	الميكروويف	doesn't work	لا تعمل
necklace (n)	عقد	late delivery	التأخر في التسليم
smart speaker (n)	مكبر صوت ذكي	wrong colour	لون خطأ
toaster (n)	آلة تحميص الخبز	wrong item	عنصر خطأ
		wrong size	مقاس خطأ

Lesson 6

bread (n)	خبز	noise (n)	ضوضاء
horrible (adj)	فظيع	noisy (adj)	صاخب
main (adj)	أساسي	present (n)	هدية
mixed up (adj)	مختلط	review (n)	مقالة نقدية

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

country (n)	دولة/بلد
delivery (n)	توصيل الطلب
expressions (n)	تعبيرات
list (n)	قائمة
meaning (n)	معنى
person (n)	شخص
problem (n)	مشكلة
still (adv)	ما زال
wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر
website (n)	موقع إنترنت

Lesson 6

delicious (adj)	لذيذ
However (conj)	ومع ذلك
loud (adj)	عالٍ الصوت
only (adv)	فقط
parents (n)	الوالدين
points (n)	نقاط
preparatory (adj)	إعدادى
primary (adj)	ابتدائى
terrible (adj)	سيئ جدًا/رهيب
title (n)	عنوان (موضوع)

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

answer ▶ a complaint	يجيب على شكوى
get ▶ angry	يغضب
keep ▶ calm	يحافظ على الهدوء
make ▶ a complaint	يقدم شكوى
take ▶ turns	يتبادل الأدوار
order ▶ pots	يطلب أوانى

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

call back	يعاود الاتصال
sorry about	آسف على
unhappy about	غير سعيد بشأن
worried about	قلق على

Lesson 6

agree with	يتفق مع
as a present for	كهدية لـ
happy with	سعيد بـ
on television	على شاشة التلفاز
send back	يعيد الإرسال/يرجع

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 5

Present		Past simple	Past participle
mean	يعنى	meant	meant
send	يرسل	sent	sent
take	يأخذ/يستغرق	took	taken

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 5

complaint (n)	شكوى	something you make when you are unhappy about something
call back (v)	يعاود الاتصال	return a phone call
order (n)	طلب	when a customer asks someone to send or make something for them
email	يرسل رسالة بريد إلكترونى	to send a message electronically

Language Notes

too أيضًا (فى آخر الجملة الإثبات)

also أيضًا (فى وسط الجملة)

- The delivery was quick, too!
- The delivery was also cheap.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is late. His mother is really worried ..... him.
   a) on b) about c) form d) at
2. Hind likes maths, she ..... likes art.
   a) also b) too c) both d) as well
3. A person who buys things from the shops is a/an ..... .
   a) seller b) assistant c) customer d) waiter

Answers ١) b ٢) a ٣) c

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Why might a customer call a company after he/she has ordered some items from them?

1. Listen to Ali calling Egyptian Handicrafts about some items he ordered. How is Ali feeling? Why?

SB page 19



Hisham : Hello, Egyptian Handicrafts[1]. How can I help you?

Ali : Hello, I want to make a complaint[2].

Hisham : Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Ali : I ordered some pots three weeks ago for my shop. Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

Hisham : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number please?

Ali : Yes, it's Ali Ahmed, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8. I emailed you last week.

Hashim : Ah yes, Mr Ahmed. You ordered 50 pots for delivery[3] to Kenya, is that right?

Ali : That's correct.

Hashim : Hmm, yes the delivery company has your order. I'll call the delivery company and ask them what the problem is and I'll call you back. Can I take your phone number please?

Ali : Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please?

Hashim : Of course.

Ali : Thank you. Goodbye.

(1) حرف يدوية

(2) شكوى

(3) توصيل

Post-listening question:

- What's Ali's complaint?

Lesson 5 — Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Do you prefer online shopping? Why/Why not?

3. *Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.* *WB page 83*

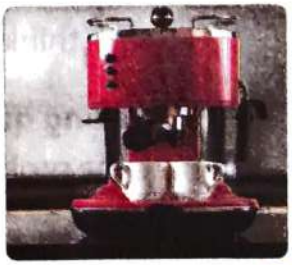
Mrs Nahla : Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.
Assistant : Oh, dear. What's the problem?
Mrs Nahla : I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the delivery arrived this morning, it was a microwave(1)!
Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name please?
Mrs Nahla : Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.
Assistant : Ah, yes. I'll call the delivery company and ask them to send you the correct item(2).
Mrs Nahla : Can they take the microwave when they come?
Assistant : Yes, of course.

(1) مايكروويف
(2) عنصر

Lesson 6 — Reading Text

1. *Work in pairs. Look quickly at the texts and answer the questions.*
SB page 20

Great Machine! ★★★★★	Don't buy this machine! ★
I bought this as a present(1) for my parents. They are very happy with it. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use. It also makes a really delicious(2) cup of coffee. The delivery(3) was quick, too!	First, I waited two weeks for delivery and then when the machine(4) arrived it was broken(5)! It looked good but it was very noisy and the coffee was cold and horrible(6). I sent it back and I will buy a different one.



(1) هدية
(2) لذيذ
(3) التوصيل
(4) آلة
(5) معطل (مكسور)
(6) فظيع/سيئ جدًا

Post-reading question:
- Can you write a review of an item you bought online?

Lesson 6 Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What do you think of online shopping?

1. Read the reviews of two items. The two reviews are mixed up. Can you write them in the correct order?

WB page 84



(1) فظيع (سيئ جدا)
(2) مكبر الصوت
(3) صاخب/مزعج

Review 1: I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. They were not very happy with it. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However, when they used it, the food didn't cook very well. It was horrible[1]. I sent it back and will buy a different one.

Review 2: I bought this speaker[2] as a present for my cousin. She is very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. There is only one problem with it: her parents think it is too loud[3]!



Post-reading question:
- What's the problem of the speaker?

Lesson 7 Reading Text

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

SB page 21

Yesterday I **went** to the market and I **bought** some new things for my bedroom. While I **was shopping**, I **saw** my friend Lara. She **helped** me to choose a new carpet. Today, my dad **painted** my bedroom. Now it **is** blue. It **looks** really good!

Lesson 7

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you have a smart phone? Who bought it to you?

1. *Complete the sentences with these words.* *WB page 85*

My older brother Karim is very excited because he has a new phone. First, he needed to **charge** the battery. To do this, he **plugged in** the phone and **turned** it on. Then he left it for a few hours. Next, he needed to **fill in** some information about himself. The phone asked for a **password**. Now he can **log in** and use his phone. It's very nice!



2. *Choose the correct words.* *WB page 85*

Huda: Look at these two wooden boxes(1). Do you like **either** of them, Lama?

Lama: Yes, I like **both** of them, but they are expensive(2).

Huda: What about these pots(3)? I like the red one and the blue one.

Lama: Sorry, I like **neither** the red one **nor** the blue one, but the yellow one is nice.

Huda: We should choose something that we **both** like. I think we should **either** buy the leather bag(4) **or** the carpet.

Lama: OK, let's buy the leather bag. The carpet(5) is a bit big!

(1) صناديق خشبية
(2) غالى الثمن
(3) أوانى
(4) حقيبه جلد
(5) سجادة

Post-reading questions:

1. Which bag will Lama buy?
2. Does Lama like the red pots?

Life Skills

Online shopping can be done anytime, but you need to be careful where you shop from! Buy from trusted sources and make sure you read the user reviews of both the seller and the product.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Your ..... is ready for delivery.
a) offer b) order c) form d) company

2 He works for a ..... that makes car parts.
a) prison b) hotel c) farm d) company

3 I hope you'll be more ..... in every way.
a) positive b) negative c) ugly d) messy

4 I'd like to make a/an ..... about the noise in my area.
a) explanation b) explain c) complaint d) complain

5 Can you ..... what this means?
a) order b) offer c) explain d) complain

6 You can't learn anything with ..... view of life.
a) negative b) positive c) good d) helpful

7 Happy birthday! I've got a ..... for you.
a) prison b) form c) prize d) present

8 This book ..... was written in a simple style.
a) revise b) review c) interview d) view

9 Her father told her not to get ..... with those students who always break school rules.
a) logged in b) plugged in c) picked up d) mixed up

10 I'll ..... the restaurant and make an order.
a) talk b) call c) chat d) speak

11 Mazin isn't here at the moment. Could you ..... later?
a) call back b) chat c) order d) send back

12 I will pay for the goods I ordered on ..... .
a) complaint b) order c) delivery d) offer

13 She spoke in a quiet voice, but her ..... were worrying.
a) grandparents b) grandchildren
c) parents d) expressions

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The worker stopped the ..... and left the factory.
a) company b) energy c) medicine d) machine

2 Can you repair this ..... chair?
a) broken b) broke c) breaking d) break

3 The ..... crops in Egypt are wheat and cotton.
a) mine b) mane c) mean d) main

4 I was very late because he made me ..... for him for a long time.
a) wait b) offer c) leave d) order

5 To find out more, visit our ..... . We have many goods online.
a) sight b) office c) company d) website

6 Do you know the ..... of this word?
a) main b) meaning c) expression d) complaint

7 ..... music can damage your hearing.
a) Cool b) Calm c) Quiet d) Loud

8 Don't be so ..... ! Your father is sleeping.
a) noisy b) quiet c) calm d) cool

9 A ..... is something you make when you are unhappy about something.
a) order b) complaint c) form d) delivery

10 Try to ..... calm and just tell me what happened.
a) have b) make c) keep d) do

11 I don't like it when you ..... angry.
a) be b) make c) keep d) get

12 You have no reason to ..... . Everything is OK.
a) explain b) complain c) order d) offer

13 Would you mind waiting? I have another ..... at the moment.
a) customer b) assistant c) toaster d) kettle

(B) Skills

1. Speaking

Making and answering a complaint

تقديم شكوى والرد عليها

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف | Response جملة الرد

Hello, how can I help you?
مرحبا، هل يمكننى مساعدك؟

Hello, I want to make a complaint.
مرحبا، أريد أن أقدم شكوى.

Oh, dear. What's the problem?
يا الهى! ما المشكلة؟

Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!
يفيد موقعكم الإلكترونى أن التوصيل يستغرق ٥ أيام، ولكنى ما زلت أنتظر.

I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number please?
أسف جدًا بشأن هذا. هل يمكننى أن أحصل على اسمك ورقم الطلب من فضلك؟

Yes, it's Waleed Ali, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8.
نعم، أنا وليد على. رقم الطلب هو ٣٤٤٥٣٨.

You ordered 50 pots for delivery to Kenya, is that right?
لقد طلبت ٥٠ إناءً للتوصيل. هل هذا صحيح؟

That's correct.
هذا صحيح.

I'll call you back. Can I take your phone number please?
سأعاود الاتصال بك. هل يمكننى الحصول على رقمك؟

Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please?
نعم، إنه ٢٥٤٦٦٧٥٧٨. هل يمكنك معاودة الاتصال اليوم؟

Of course.
بالطبع؟

Thank you. Goodbye.
شكرا، إلى اللقاء.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tarek is making a complaint.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Tarek : Yes, (1)..... .

Assistant : Oh, dear. (2).....?

Tarek : I ordered a toaster from your website, but the delivery takes three days and I'm still waiting!

Assistant : (3).....?

Tarek : Yes, it's Tarek, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8.

Assistant : I'll call the delivery company.

Tarek : (4)..... me back today, please?

Assistant : Yes, of course.

Tarek : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You tell the assistant that you have a complaint.

.....

2 You're the assistant and you want to know what the customer's complaint is.

.....

3 Make a complaint about the late delivery of your laptop.

.....

4 You're the assistant and you feel sorry about the customer's complaint.

.....

5 You ask the assistant to call you back.

.....

6 You explain your complaint to the assistant.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about an online review

كيف تكتب عن مقالة نقدية عبر الإنترنت

- I bought this ..... as a present for .....
- It looks ..... and the delivery was .....
- ..... happy/not happy with it.
- It was horrible. I sent it back and will buy a different one.
- It looks great and it is very easy to use.

Writing tips

Write down information and ideas related to the topic.

دون المعلومات والأفكار المرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

"Online review"

At first, I like shopping online because it has many advantages. It saves time and money. You buy what you want without moving. However, my point of view changed when I decided to buy a present online. As usual, I visited websites for electronics until I found this website. I ordered a toaster as a present for my mother on her birthday. The website said the delivery would be in two days, but the delivery arrived in two weeks. I opened the box and put it in the kitchen. It looked great and good, but when I plugged it in, it made smoke then a fire. That was terrible. At once I called them and asked them I want to send it back. They were kind and they were sorry. After two days a new toaster arrived. It was really great in the kitchen. My mum was very happy with it.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

A review of an online clothes shop

Lessons 5&6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A client wants to make a complaint.

Clerk : Good afternoon, madam. Can I help you?

Client : Yes, (1)..... the manager, please.

Clerk : Well, I'm afraid he is busy just now. (2).....?

Client : No, I don't have an appointment. I just want to make a complaint.

Clerk : A complaint? (3).....?

Client : Yes, I have a problem with this kettle. I'm afraid it doesn't work.

Clerk : (4)..... . We'll be happy to replace it for you.

Client : (5).....?

Clerk : You will take it in a few minutes.

Client : Thanks. I'm waiting.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You tell the shopkeeper you have a complaint.

.....

2 The assistant asks you what your problem is.

.....

3 You're the assistant and you tell the customer you feel sorry about his/her complaint.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I want to see the order ..... . I didn't order this at all.

a) firm b) form c) farm d) from

2 The jacket was the ..... size. It is too small for me.

a) wrong b) correct c) right d) true

3 The coffee tasted ..... . I didn't like it at all.

a) cool b) delicious c) horrible d) nice

4 I'm sorry about the ..... delivery.
a) late b) early c) good d) cool

5 You will face many ..... during your life, but you should be strong.
a) offers b) orders c) views d) problems

6 The ..... of the book is "GEM".
a) order b) delivery c) address d) title

7 Please help me with the work in the ..... . There are many dirty plates.
a) kitchen b) bedroom c) living room d) sitting room

8 Neither Mona ..... Hala went to the club yesterday.
a) or b) and c) nor d) of

9 I was working on the project ..... the manager called for me.
a) while b) as c) before d) when

10 My mother ..... me a present because I got the full marks.
a) gave b) give c) was giving d) gives

4 Fill in the gaps:

I (1)..... to the shops with mum to buy some clothes. We went to the best two shops in the city centre. The first shop has casual clothes. I saw two trousers, but we decided to take (2)..... the red one or the blue one. After that we went to the second shop. We saw two shirts, but we took (3)..... of them because they (4)..... too expensive.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of the best and worst items of technology in your house." WB

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 2 Review



(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advertise (d)	يعلن	log (ged) in	يسجل الدخول
artist	فنان	machine	آلة
battery	بطارية	microwave	الميكروويف
carpet	سجادة	mixed up	مختلط
cassette player	مشغل كاسيت	MP3 player	مشغل موسيقى
charge (d)	يشحن	negative	سلبى
coffee machine	آلة صنع القهوة	order form	نموذج الطلب
colourful	ملون/زاهى الألوان	oven	فرن
company	شركة	password	كلمة السر/المرور
complaint	شكوى	positive	ايجابى
customer	زبون	price	سعر
deal	صفقة/يتعامل	quality	جودة
decorate (d)	يزين/يزخرف	review	مقالة نقدية
delivery	توصيل طلبات	sale	تخفيض/أوكازيون
design	تصميم/يصمم	shop assistant	مساعد متجر/بائع
discount	تخفيض/خصم	smart	ذكى
explain (ed)	يشرح	special offer	عرض خاص
fill in (ed)	يملأ استمارة	store	متجر
form	استمارة	style	أسلوب
handicraft	حرفة يدوية	survey	دراسة/استبيان
headphones	سماعات الرأس	toaster	آلة تحميص الخبز
horrible	فظيع	traditional	تقليدى
industry	صناعة	turn (ed) off	يغلق جهازًا
kettle	غلاية	turn (ed) on	يفتح جهازًا
leather	جلد	plug (ged) in	يقوم بتوصيل جهاز

(B) Language

مقارنة الصفات:

1 Comparing adjectives:

الصفة	comparative المقارنة بين اثنين	Superlative المقارنة بين مجموعة
ظرف/صفة قصيرة	short adj./adv. + er + (than)	the + short adj. / adv. + est
ظرف/صفة طويلة	more/less + long adj./adv. (ly) + (than)	the most/the least + long adj./ adv.(ly)

2 both .. and/ either .. or/ neither .. nor

- She speaks both English and Arabic.
- Either you leave the building now or I call the police.
- I want neither the red shirt nor the blue shirt.

أزمنة الماضى:

3 The past tenses:

1. The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

- I ate my lunch an hour ago.
- I always played when I was young.

2. The past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

- We were playing football yesterday evening.
- While/As I **was sleeping**, my uncle **visited** us.
- When my uncle **visited** us, I **was sleeping**.

(C) Skills

Speaking

1. Buying something in a shop

- Can I help you?
- I'm looking for a new dress.
- What colour would you like?
- I'd like purple, please.
- What size would you like?
- I'd like (small/ medium/ large) size.
- How much is it?/How much does it cost?
- It's 600 pounds.

2. Making and answering a complaint

- I want to make a complaint.
- Oh, dear. What's the complaint?
- Your website says the delivery takes five days but I'm still waiting!
- I will call the delivery company.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 2 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Ghada : Did you turn on the computer?

Hadeer : .....

B) Waleed : .....?

Mesbah : The delivery takes too long and I'm still waiting!

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Televisions are more expensive	a) the laptop suddenly turned off.
2. Do either of you go shopping every day?	b) than kettles.
3. While I was doing my homework,	c) No, I don't. I go once a week.
4. These beautiful wooden boxes	d) for delivery.
5. I bought this as	e) a present for my parents.
	f) can be used for jewellery.

Answers: 1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( ) 4. ( ) 5. ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about TEN (10) sentences on:

"Online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 2

Based on Unit 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal invites Ghada to go to the mall.

Amal : Hello, can I speak to Ghada? I'm Amal.
Ghada : (1)..... . It's me. I'm Ghada.
Amal : Hi, Ghada. (2).....?
Ghada : Nothing much. I'm just relaxing today. Why? What's going on?
Amal : I am thinking about going to the mall. (3).....?
Ghada : Yes, I do. Are they having a sale?
Amal : Yes. It's a great time to buy some clothes.
Ghada : That sounds great. (4).....?
Amal : I'll meet you in front of the mall in 30 minutes.
Ghada : Sounds good. (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 The shop assistant wants to know the size of your jacket.

.....

2 You ask the assistant if they have any toasters.

.....

3 You have a complaint about the laptop you bought last week.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am unhappy with the quality of a television I bought at 5 Street on 15th December and I want to make a complaint. The screen was damaged and it's quite dark. The television was delivered on 30th December and I found out this problem as soon as I took it out of the box.

The television is of bad quality and does not match the sample I was shown in the store. I would like you to replace it with one of high quality with no extra cost.

I would like you to solve this problem quickly please. I hope to hear from you soon. You can contact me to discuss this matter further.

Yours sincerely,
Said Darahem

A) Answer the following questions:

1 What is the main idea of this email?

.....

2 When did the writer buy his television?

.....

3 What does the writer want from his complaint?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 The television was ..... on the delivery.

a) of high quality b) stolen c) broken d) good

5 The sample he saw at the store was ..... .

a) ugly b) damaged

c) bad d) of high quality

6 The delivery was after ..... days from buying the TV.

a) 15 b) 30 c) 10 d) 20

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 These are leather goods of high ..... . They are the best at all.

a) quantity b) quality c) industry d) prize

2 The shoe shop is having a ..... this week. They sell at half price.

a) sail b) store c) website d) sale

3 The shop ..... should be kind to all customers to make them come again to his shop.

a) deal b) sale c) assistant d) discount

4 I saw a/an ..... for some cheap furniture in our local paper.

a) message b) form c) email d) advert

5 If your laptop doesn't start, you should ..... it.

a) make b) get c) do d) charge

6 I bought this coffee machine ..... a present for my parents.

a) as b) like c) such d) such as

7 "....." means to send a message electronically.

a) Call back b) Charge c) Email d) Plug in

8 I was born in ..... city in this country.

a) larger b) large c) largest d) the largest

9 ..... stay or go. It's your decision.

a) Both b) Either c) Neither d) None

10 William Shakespeare ..... many plays.

a) writing b) was written

c) wrote d) was writing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 It is ..... (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.

2 We'll arrive either on Friday night ..... (nor) Saturday morning.

3 While I ..... (listen) to the doctor, somebody knocked at the door.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 January is always longer than February. (shorter)

.....

2 My sister doesn't like tea and she doesn't like coffee. (neither ... nor)

.....

3 She was going to the club when I met her yesterday. (While)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A complaint about a machine you bought online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 2

Think and Create

1. An advert

Your father asked you to design an advert for his company. He sells electronic devices.

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What is special about the company?
- What are the devices made of?
- Do you have special offers? How long do they last?
- How can you attract the customers?
- What colours will you use in the advert?



2. Handicrafts

You are a reporter and you are planning to do a report about handicrafts.

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Which countries are famous for beautiful handicrafts?
- What do the handicrafts look like? What are they made of?
- Are they decorated?
- How much are the handicrafts? Why do people want to buy them?

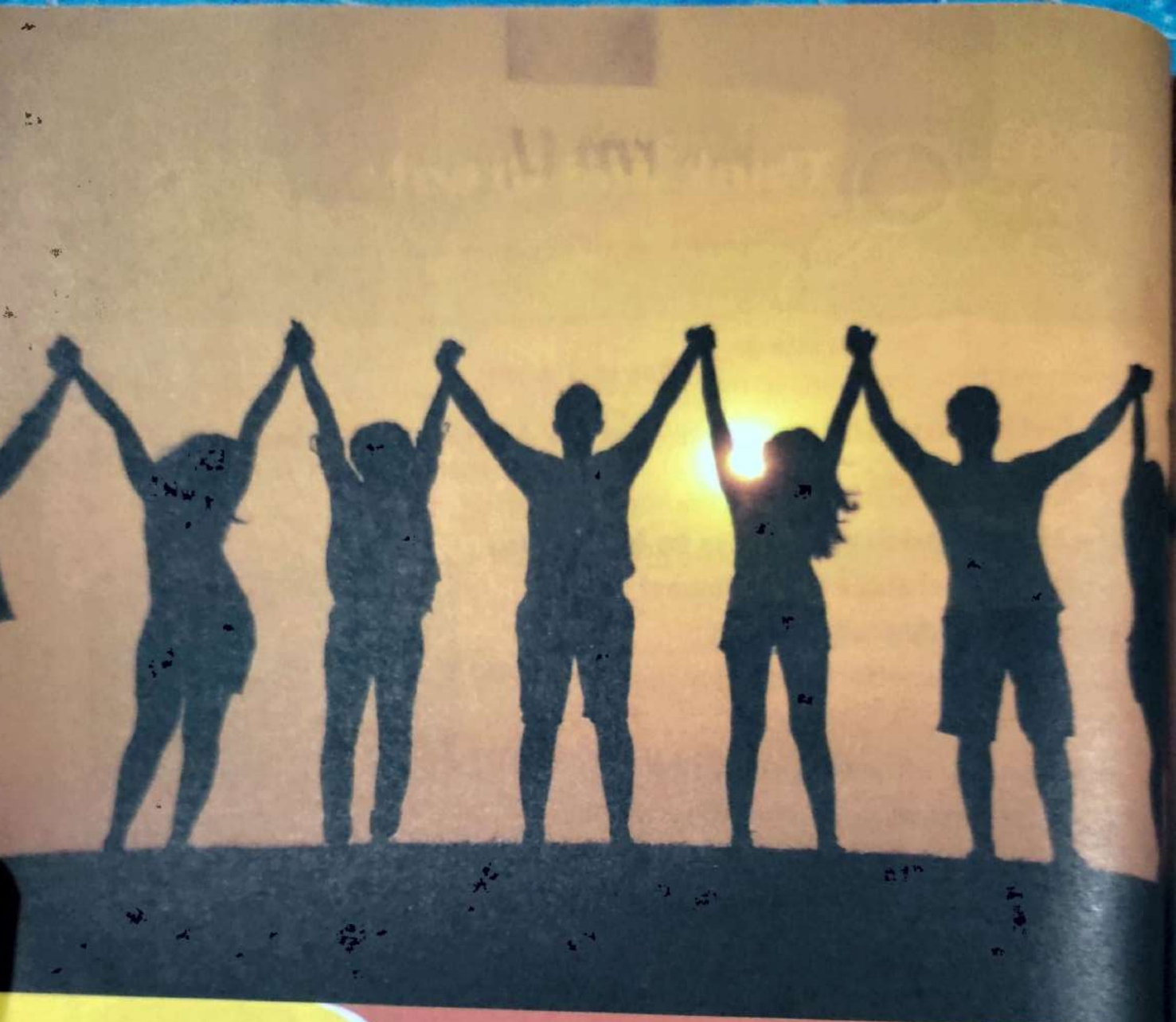






Tips

1 ➤ A suitable title
2 ➤ An introduction
3 ➤ Main ideas and information
4 ➤ Resources



Unit 3 My community

Objectives of the unit

Reading : An article about a plan to help poor people; a community social network page; David Copperfield; an online message about a community project

Writing : An article about how to help poor people; a social network message about a community problem; a survey about your community

Listening : A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community meeting; people greeting and introducing each other

Speaking : Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings

Language : Adjectives ending in *-ing* or *-ed*

Life Skills : Participation: responsible behaviour; Respect for diversity

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

Warm Up

Here is a group of pictures describing the community we live in. Tick the pictures that show the community's problems.








1. Do you have any other problems in your community? If yes, mention them.

.....

2. Do you think people are responsible for these problems? Why/Why not?

.....

3. How can people help to solve these problems?

.....

4. If you were a minister (وزير), what would you do?

.....

Lessons 1 & 2

SB Pages 22-25
WB Pages 86 & 87

(A) Vocabulary

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n)	noun
(v)	verb
(adj)	adjective
(adv)	adverb
(prep)	preposition
(conj)	conjunction
(pro)	pronoun

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

activities (n)	أنشطة	local (adj)	محلى
accessible (adj)	يمكن الوصول إليه	opportunity (y ies) (n)	فرصة
community (n)	مجتمع	pavement (n)	رصيف (شارع)
disabled (adj)	معاق	project (n)	مشروع
elderly (adj)	كبار السن	recent (adj)	حالى/حديث
equal (adj)	مساوٍ	safe streets	شوارع آمنه
event (n)	حدث	sports (n/adj)	ألعاب رياضية/رياضى
facilities (n)	تسهيلات/مرافق	streetlights (n)	أضواء الشوارع
improve (d) (v)	يحسن	survey (n)	دراسة استقصائية/استبيان
including (prep)	متضمنًا	transport (n)	المواصلات/النقل
leisure (n)	وقت فراغ/ترفيه		

Lesson 2

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	education (n)	التعليم
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
article (n)	مقال	festival (n)	مهرجان
buildings (n)	مبانٍ	health care (n)	رعاية صحية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
decent (adj)	كريم/لائق	initiative (n)	مبادرة
deliver (ed) (v)	يسلم/يوصل	interest (ed) (v/n)	يهتم/اهتمام

medicine (n)	دواء
neighbourhood (n)	حى/جيرة
plan (ned) (n/v)	خطة/يخطط
provide (d) (v)	يوفر / يقدم
public services (n)	خدمات عامة
quality (n)	جودة
repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
rural areas (n)	المناطق الريفية
surprise (d) (v/n)	يدهش/مفاجأة
washing machine (n)	غسالة
website (n)	موقع إنترنت
work (n)	عمل

Adjectives الصفات

Adjective ending in -ing		Adjective ending in -ed		Adjective ending in -ing		Adjective ending in -ed	
amazing	مذهل	amazed	مذهول	boring	ممل	bored	شاعر بالملل
disappointing	محبِط	disappointed	محبَط	exciting	مثير	excited	متشوق
surprising	مدهش	surprised	مندهش	interesting	شيق	interested	مهتم
tiring	مُرهِق	tired	مُتعب				

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

actually (adv)	فى الواقع
area (n)	منطقة
club (n)	نادى
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
heading (n)	عنوان رئيسى
history museum (n)	متحف التاريخ
Mashrou El Saada (n)	مشروع السعادة
match (ed) (v)	يطابق/يتماشى
notes (n)	ملاحظات
playground (n)	ملعب
street (n)	شارع
such as	مثل
the latest (adj)	أحدث/آخر
the police (n)	الشرطة
theatre (n)	مسرح
young people (n)	الشباب

Lesson 2

achievement (n)	إنجاز	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
businesses (n)	أعمال	member (n)	فرد/عضو
class trip (n)	رحلة الفصل	million (n)	مليون
clean water	ماء نظيف	object (n)	شيء
community centre (n)	مركز اجتماعى	really (adv)	حقًا
cough (ed) (v)	يكح/يسعل	situation (n)	موقف
daughter (n)	ابنة	snow (n)	جليد
electricity (n)	كهرباء	the Decent Life Initiative (n)	مبادرة حياة كريمة
healthy (adj)	صحى	tourist (n)	سائح
idea (n)	فكرة	village (n)	قرية
ill (adj)	مريض		

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

do	▶ a survey	يقوم بدراسة/استطلاع	put up	▶ streetlights	يركب أضواء للشوارع
help at	▶ community projects	يساعد فى المشاريع المجتمعية	send	▶ text messages	يرسل رسائل نصية
plant	▶ flowers	يزرع زهورًا	start	▶ a project	يبدأ مشروعًا
improve	▶ facilities	يحسن المرافق	have	▶ leisure activities	لديه أنشطة ترفيهية

Lesson 2

do	▶ well	يؤدى جيدًا	make	▶ a difference to	يحدث اختلافًا لـ
find	▶ work for	يجد عملًا لـ	open	▶ businesses	يفتح أعمالًا
give	▶ work	يعطى عملًا	play	▶ chess	يلعب (شطرنج)
have	▶ a better education	لديه تعليم أفضل	The walk over	▶ the mountains	المشى فوق الجبل
	a problem	لديه مشكلة	deliver	▶ medicine	يوصل الدواء
	an effect on	لديه تأثير على	provide	▶ health care	توفر الرعاية الصحية

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

facilities for	تسهيلات/خدمات لـ	stop + مفعول + from	يمنع/يوقف من
for example	على سبيل المثال	travel around	يسافر حول/يتجول
of all ages	بكل الأعمار	What kind of ...?	ما نوع ...؟
problem for	مشكلة لـ	works of art	أعمال فنية

Lesson 2

about	حوالى/عن	hear about	يسمع عن
aim to	يهدف إلى	look after	يعتنى بـ
around the country	فى جميع أنحاء البلاد	plan for	يخطط ل
encourage to + inf.	يشجع أن	plan to	يخطط أن
find out about	يكتشف عن	try to + inf.	يحاول أن

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير	wide	واسع	narrow	ضيق

Lesson 2

clean	نظيف	dirty	قذر/متسخ	poor	فقير	rich	غنى
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى	rural	ريفى	urban	مدنى

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 1			
show	يعرض/يبين	showed	shown
teach	يُدرس/يُعلم	taught	taught
Lesson 2			
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 2

deliver (v)	يسلم/يوصل	take a letter or object to a place or building
encourage (v)	يشجع	try to make people do something
health care (n)	الرعاية الصحية	looking after people's health
make a difference	يُحدث اختلافًا	having a good effect on a person, place or situation
neighbourhood (n)	حي/جيرة	a small area of a town or village and the people who live in it
public services (n)	خدمات عامة	services, such as electricity or water, to help the members of a community

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should keep our streets ..... .
a) keen
b) clean
c) dirty
d) unhealthy

2 I watched a funny play at the ..... .
a) theatre
b) museum
c) bank
d) playground

3 A lot of people were walking on the ..... of the main street.
a) charity
b) post office
c) platform
d) pavement

Answers (١ b) (٢ a) (٣ d)

Language Notes

own (خاص بـ (وهى تستخدم بعد صفات الملكية لتأكيد الملكية الخاصة بالشخص

1. **my/our/your/his/her/their/its + own +** الاسم
   - What do you think are the best things about your own community?

2. **the + adj.** الصفة — تعنى الاسم الجمع من الصفة أى الفئة كلها
   the rich الأغنياء = rich people الناس الأغنياء/ the disabled المعاقون = disabled people الناس المعاقين
   - The **poor** are the people who don't have enough money.

3. **the police +** فعل جمع — الشرطة (اسم جمع)
   - The police **have** the right to catch bad people.

4. **might + inf.** ربما/قد (تستخدم للتعبير عن الاحتمال فى المضارع أو المستقبل)
   - You might **be** surprised to know that 75% of people living in villages in Upper Egypt are very poor.

5. **by + (V+ing)** بواسطة
   - It is helping more children to have a better education by **building** schools in the villages.

6. **plan to + inf.** يخطط أن
   - The initiative plans **to help** to find work for more than five million young people.

7. **thank .... for (v-ing/n)** يشكر على
   - Thank you all for **coming** along to the meeting.
   - Thanks for your **help**.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He earned money by ..... .
   a) paint b) painting c) painted d) paints
2. The police ..... chasing a thief.
   a) has b) was c) is d) are
3. This is my ..... bike. Don't touch it!
   a) own b) belong c) possess d) owe

Answers ١) b ٢) d ٣) a

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - What is special about your community?

1. Listen to Fareed and Salah talking about the community survey. What facilities do they talk about?

SB page 23







(1) مجتمع
(2) تسهيلات
(3) مشروعات
(4) يتطوع
(5) كبار السن
(6) أنشطة ترفيهية
(7) يحسن/يطور
(8) فرص متساوية
(9) أرصفة
(10) يمكن الوصول إليه

Fareed : I think the best thing about our community[1] is the facilities[2]. We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.

Salah : Yes, I think we have a very strong community. We have lots of community projects[3] where we can volunteer[4] to help people, especially the elderly[5].

Fareed : Yes, we're starting a project next month where young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology.

Salah : We have really good leisure activities[6] here too – sports facilities and the children's playground, for example. There are lots of places where families can enjoy being outside together.

Fareed : That's right, but I think we could improve[7] our equal opportunities[8]. Our pavements[9], for example, are not accessible[10] for all and make it difficult for disabled people to use them.

Salah : You're right. They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting, actually.

Fareed : We should go.

Salah : Good idea!

Post-listening question:

- What is the problem they're discussing next community meeting?

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think are the best things about your own community?

2. Complete the text with these words and phrases. WB page 86



(1) مجتمع

(2) تسهيلات محلية

(3) متحف التاريخ

(4) غير القادرين

(5) مشروعات مجتمعية

(6) كبار السن

I live in a great community (1). There are lots of **sports activities** for young people, such as volleyball and tennis clubs. There are also many local community facilities (2) for people of all ages, including a great theatre and a history museum (3). Our roads have wide **pavements**, so it is not a problem for disabled people (4) to travel around. I help at one of the community projects (5), too. We help the elderly (6) to learn about the latest technology. My grandmother sends lots of text messages now!

Post-reading question:

Complete the following sentences:

1. There are lots of ..... for young people.
2. There are also many local ..... for people of all ages.
3. My grandmother sends lots of ..... now!

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What problems do you think some of the people who live in villages have?

2. Read about the Decent Life Initiative. What is it doing about the problems that you discussed in Exercise 1?

SB page 24

The Decent Life Initiative



The Decent Life Initiative[1] is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in rural areas[2] in Egypt. The initiative aims to[3] improve the quality of public services[4]. It provides[5] more health care[6], better education[7] and better job opportunities[8]. Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair[9] their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver[10] medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved facilities for disabled people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. In addition, young people will also be encouraged[11] to find out about the interesting new businesses[12] the Decent Life Initiative is opening, which can give them work.

The Decent Life Initiative will continue to help people in poor neighbourhoods[13] around the country. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people. That really is an amazing plan!

Post-reading question:

- How has the Decent Life Initiative helped people around the country?

(1) مبادرة حياة كريمة
(2) المناطق الريفية
(3) تهدف إلى
(4) خدمات عامة
(5) توفر
(6) رعاية صحية
(7) تعليم
(8) فرص عمل
(9) يصلح
(10) يوصل
(11) يشجع
(12) أعمال تجارية
(13) أحياء

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I always ..... my friends to play chess with me. It's a great time. WB
a) deliver b) volunteer c) interview d) encourage

2 A/An ..... woman is climbing up the stairs with difficulty because she has weak knees.
a) adult b) infant c) strong d) elderly

3 The town doesn't have ..... facilities such as swimming pools or squash courts.
a) leisure b) free c) busy d) funny

4 He tried to ..... my computer, but he couldn't.
a) repair b) encourage c) plan d) preserve

5 Take the ..... three times a day. You'll be OK.
a) football b) handball c) chess d) medicine

6 Many people think that the public ..... are getting better in Egypt.
a) notice b) nervous c) services d) surface

7 I love this green ..... . It's amazing.
a) volunteer b) charity c) action d) area

8 Did you ..... the problem with your parents?
a) say b) discuss c) donate d) interview

9 Are there ..... for the elderly and disabled people? SB
a) headings b) results c) facilities d) differences

10 We must provide ..... housing for the poor.
a) descend b) decent c) poor d) weak

11 The Decent Life Initiative ..... to improve the quality of public services. SB
a) provides b) looks c) aims d) repairs

12 I want to work somewhere where I can help the ..... in my neighbourhood.
a) country b) community c) place d) area

13 The museum is easily ..... by public transport.
a) comfortable b) terrible c) incredible d) accessible

14 Can you tell the ..... between computers and laptops?
a) different b) difference
c) differ d) differently

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you run in the park every week, it will really ..... a difference to how healthy you feel. WB
a) make b) do c) deliver d) offer

2 Trees themselves also ..... an effect on the climate.
a) have b) do c) make d) find

3 She ..... well in her first year at school.
a) had b) took c) made d) did

4 What time are they going to ..... the new washing machine? WB
a) plan b) deliver c) make d) cause

5 You can ask your teacher any time. In ....., there are evening classes.
a) exception b) discussion c) addiction d) addition

6 This river is too ..... . We can't swim across it.
a) narrow b) wide c) low d) tiny

7 Don't ride your bike ..... the pavement!
a) on b) in c) of d) for

8 The country tries to improve public services, especially ..... .
a) education b) graduation c) presentation d) pollution

9 Try to find an attractive ..... to your article.
a) result b) interview c) heading d) community

10 Nowadays, young people have greater ..... than ever before; they could have a better life.
a) interviews b) losses c) pavements d) opportunities

11 We are happy with your result. We hope you ..... with us.
a) mean b) stop c) end d) continue

12 The Decent Life Initiative will make a difference to people who live in ..... areas.
a) ruler b) roller c) rural d) rule

13 The new projects in Egypt ..... a lot of jobs for young people.
a) divide b) provide c) revise d) hide

14 Who's the oldest ..... in your family?
a) number b) member c) remember d) temper

15 There are shops in the ..... of my house.
a) neighbours b) neighbouring
c) neighbourhood d) neighbour

(B) Language

1 The present continuous: زمن المضارع المستمر:

Remember It's used to describe actions that are happening now.

تذكر أنه يستخدم للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

Use the present continuous to talk about finished future plans (at a specific time or place) and arrangements.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية النهائية. (مستقبل مرتب له مسبقًا).

Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + am/ is/ are (not) + v + ing

- We're starting a project next month.
- I am not travelling abroad next summer holiday.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look! – Listen! – now – still – at the moment – at the present

- Look! Ali is riding his new bike.
- Listen! Mona is singing beautifully.

1. Yes/No questions:

Question السؤال

Is/Are + subject + v + ing?

- Is Salma travelling to Rome?
- Are they playing tennis now?

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + is/are + subject + v + ing?

- What is Hany **doing**?
- Where are the girls **going**?

لاحظ أن:

كيف تعرف أن الحدث مرتب له مسبقًا؟

- We are travelling next week. **We have got the tickets.** (يذكر الترتيب الذى تم)
- We are having a party next Friday. **It's arranged.** (يذكر كلمة دالة على الترتيب)
- I am meeting my cousin **at seven at the new restaurant.** (يحدد موعد أو مكان الحدث)

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Gamal ..... (arrive) at noon tomorrow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is arriving) لأنه مستقبل مرتب له وهنا نستخدم المضارع المستمر.

2 Adjectives ending in *-ing* or *-ed*: الصفات:

Use adjectives ending in *-ing* to describe a noun (thing/person) that causes a feeling.

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ing- لوصف الاسم/(الشىء/الشخص). (مسبب الصفة للآخرين).

- The scene of rubbish was **disappointing**.
- The results of the survey were **interesting**.

Use adjectives ending in *-ed* to describe a feeling.

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ed- لوصف الشعور. (أى عند الشعور بالصفة).

- Khaled was **disappointed** to see the rubbish.
- I was **interested** to see the results of the survey.

لاحظ أن:

أسماء الجماد تأخذ فقط الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ing- أما الكائن الحى (إنسان/حيوان/طائر) فإنه يأخذ الاثنين ing- أو ed-.

- The **book** is interesting. **I** am interested in reading it.
- The handball **match** was exciting. **I** was excited to watch the match.
- **My cousin** is boring. He doesn't like doing any activities.
- **Wael** is interesting. He lives on a boat! I like spending time with him.
- **The goats** were frightened of the lion. **It**'s very frightening.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I was really ..... (bore) in that presentation.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (bored) لأنها هنا تعبر عن الشعور بالصفة.

2. Have you seen that film? It's really ..... (frighten).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (frightening) لأنها هنا تصف اسم (الفيلم).

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When is Mr Kamal ..... (go) to Paris?
2. The play was ..... (amaze). I recommend it for you.
3. Roaa felt ..... (surprising) when I bought her a present.

Answers 1 going 2 amazing 3 surprised

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They ..... this problem at the next community meeting. SB
a) discuss b) are discussing c) is discussing d) discusses

2 I was ..... by the number of people who came to the festival. SB
a) amazing b) amazed c) amaze d) boring

3 We ..... a barbecue on Sunday.
a) have b) had c) have had d) are having

4 We ..... to the zoo tomorrow because we don't have free time.
a) are going b) aren't going c) haven't gone d) not going

5 ..... they coming over for dinner?
a) Is b) Are c) Am d) Was

6 She is an ..... woman. Everyone likes her.
a) interest b) interests c) interesting d) interested

7 The ..... children jumped up and down.
a) exciting b) excited c) excite d) excites

8 Don't read that book. It's ..... .
a) bores b) bore c) bored d) boring

9 The train ..... in ten minutes.
a) leaves b) leave c) is leaving d) will leave

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We ..... (have) a party this weekend. We've already bought the drinks.
2 Sitting on the beach is very ..... (relax).
3 She finds football practice extremely ..... (tired).

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 He has arranged to travel to Rome. (travelling)
.....

2 We are taking the express train to Aswan. (arranged)
.....

3 I'm getting bored with that book. (That book)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Today's maths lesson was very ..... . I learned a lot.
a) interest b) interesting c) interested d) interests

2 What time ..... coming?
a) they are b) you are c) she's d) is he

3 She ..... us tomorrow. She's got a meeting.
a) hasn't visited b) didn't visit c) isn't visiting d) doesn't visit

4 My aunt is ..... at our house this week.
a) stay b) staying c) stays d) stayed

5 Why ..... playing football tomorrow?
a) he not is b) he isn't c) isn't he d) he's

6 A long walk is really ..... .
a) tired b) tiring c) attracting d) attracted

7 I think the dog is ..... because it's having fun.
a) exciting b) excited c) frightened d) frightening

8 I will be very ..... if she does well in her test.
a) surprise b) surprises c) surprising d) surprised

9 I ..... the manager tomorrow.
a) saw b) am seeing
c) am hoping to see d) am looking forward to see

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 What you are doing on Friday evening? (.....)
2 I loved my maths teacher! Lessons with her were never bore. (.....)
3 I was disappoint that I didn't get the job. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Hany has arranged to spend the weekend in the village. (is spending)
.....

2 We made all the preparations to visit Alexandria next holiday. (visiting)
.....

3 Are you frightened of dogs? (frightening)
.....

(C) Skills

Write it right

How to write about how to improve Egypt's villages

كيفية الكتابة عن كيفية تطوير قرى مصر

- How many people live in villages around Egypt?
- Why did the government make a plan "The Decent Life Initiative" for these villages?
- How has the Decent Life Initiative helped the poor?
- What do you think of the initiative?

Writing tips

Think about the topic you are writing about and consider what the most relevant ideas or issues related to that topic.

- فكر فى الموضوع المطلوب منك الكتابة عنه وخذ فى الاعتبار أكثر الأفكار ملائمة وارتباطًا بالموضوع.

Example

"Egypt's villages"

There are about 32 million people who live in rural areas in Egypt. The government made a plan to make a difference to the life of those people. The plan called "The Decent Life Initiative" aims to improve the quality of public services. It provides more health care, better education and better good opportunities. Since 2019, it has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses. It has sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved facilities for disabled people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people. That really is an amazing plan!

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "How to improve your village":

"How to improve my village"

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

SB

Adam and Amr are talking about a book.

Adam : Are you enjoying that book, Amr?
Amr : (1)..... .
Adam : (2).....?
Amr : Because it's not my favourite kind.
Adam : (3).....?
Amr : I like adventure stories. Did you read it?
Adam : (4)..... . I read it last year, but I thought it was amazing! The ending is surprising.
Amr : Well, your review makes it sound very interesting. Perhaps I should finish it!
Adam : I hope you will enjoy it.
Amr : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your teacher asks you what we could do to help the community.

.....

2 You ask a friend of yours if they have any facilities for elderly and disabled people.

.....

3 You encourage your friend to start a charity.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This store only sells top ..... products. I recommend it.
a) quality b) equality c) bad d) trash

2 They ..... to visit a vegetable garden.
a) made b) designed c) planned d) improved

3 The hotel has special ..... for welcoming disabled people.
a) events b) volunteers c) facilities d) opportunities

4 We should help improve our pavements to be ..... for the disabled.
a) accessible b) horrible c) impossible d) sensible

5 House prices increased in ..... months.
a) little b) much c) crowded d) recent

6 It would be an excellent ..... to get out of this house with its terrible memories.
a) opportunity b) community c) immunity d) unity

7 The city needs to ..... its public transport.
a) prove b) encourage c) improve d) expect

8 I am ..... about the tennis match; it is really wonderful.
a) attracting b) attractive c) exciting d) excited

9 We ..... to London tomorrow. We got our tickets.
a) will fly b) are flying
c) fly d) are going to fly

10 It will be a very ..... experience for my mother. She will like it.
a) exciting b) boring c) bored d) excited

4 Fill in the gaps:

I like reading. It's my favourite hobby. I think reading is the most (1)..... hobby. One day I borrowed a book from my school library to read at home, but I found it (2)..... . I didn't enjoy reading it. I'm (3)..... in reading adventure stories. I think they are exciting, but I was (4)..... to find this book very boring.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I am usually very bored with that game. (That game)
.....

2 They have made all the arrangements for travelling to Paris. (are)
.....

3 Hatem has arranged to visit his uncle on his farm. (visiting)
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on: WB

"What you can do to help people in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB Pages 26 - 28
WB Pages 88 & 89

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

art class (n)	حصة فنون
bench (n)	مقعد
business (n)	عمل تجارى
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل
communication (n)	تواصل
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
experience (n)	خبرة
graffiti (n)	الرسم على الجدران
historic building	مبنى تاريخى
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
matter (n)	قضية/موضوع
noticeboard (n)	لوحة إعلانات
pleasant (adj)	سار/جذاب/ممتع
repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
repairs (n)	إصلاحات
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
service (n)	خدمة
situation (n)	موقف
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
stranger (n)	غريب
town hall (n)	مبنى البلدية
traffic (n)	حركة المرور

Forms of communication أشكال/ أنواع التواصل

community centre noticeboard (n)	لوحة إعلانات مركز المجتمع
leaflets (n)	منشورات
local newspaper (n)	صحيفة محلية
local radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية محلية
meetings (n)	اجتماعات
posters (n)	ملصقات إعلانية
social network service (n)	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية

Adjectives & Nouns صفات وأسماء

Adjective الصفة	Noun الاسم	Adjective الصفة	Noun الاسم
dark مظلم	darkness الظلام	quiet هادئ	quietness الهدوء
ill مريض	illness المرض	sweet حلو المذاق	sweetness حلاوة المذاق
kind عطوف/ طيب	kindness العطف	weak ضعيف	weakness الضعف

Lesson 4

factory (n)	مصنع	lodger (n)	مستأجر (لغرفة بمنزل)
furniture (n)	أثاث	manager (n)	مدير
greet (ed) (v)	يحيى/يرحب بـ	tenant (n)	مستأجر (المنزل)

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

clearly (adv)	بوضوح	person (n)	شخص
Egyptians (n)	المصريون	play (n)	مسرحية
fail (ed) (v)	يفشل/يرسب	pollution (n)	تلوث
forest (n)	غابة	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
general (adj)	عام	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
leaf/leaves (n)	ورقة/أوراق شجرة	salty (adj)	مالح
message (n)	رسالة	sunny (adj)	مشمس
note (n)	ملاحظة/مذكرة	topic (n)	موضوع
paint (ed) (v)	يلون/يدهن	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء

Lesson 4

describe (d) (v)	يصف	metro ticket (n)	تذكرة مترو
healthy (adj)	صحى	one day	ذات يوم
Lebanon (n)	دولة لبنان	story (n)	قصة
letter (n)	خطاب	wife (n)	زوجة
meal (n)	وجبة		

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

feel	▶ unwell	يشعر بمرض/بتوعك	lost and found		المفقودات
give	▶ a call	يتصل	share	▶ ideas	يشارك الأفكار
help	▶ someone to a bench	يساعد شخصًا لإيجاد مقعد	plant	▶ trees	يزرع شجر

Lesson 4

have	▶ a visitor	لديه زائر	say	▶ hello (to)	يحيى (شخص)
	▶ money	يمتلك المال			

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

a message of thanks	رسالة شكر	for a rest	من أجل الراحة
along the streets	بطول الشوارع	for an art class	من أجل حصة الفنون
an example of	مثال لـ	for sale	للبيع
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	help with	يساعد فى
at a community meeting	فى أحد اجتماعات المجتمع المحلى	move to	ينتقل إلى
by the river	بجوار النهر	on the noticeboard	على لوحة الإعلانات
clean up	ينظف	pleased/ surprised by	مسرور/مندهش بواسطة/بـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع	project on	مشروع فى
cover in	يُغطى بـ	sit on a bench	يجلس على مقعد
different from	مختلف عن	thanks to	بفضل
donate for	يتبرع من أجل	visitor to	زائر لـ/إلى

Lesson 4

(be) able to	يكون قادرًا أن	pay for	يدفع لـ
in what ways	بأى الطرق	pleased to meet you	سعدت بمقابلتك

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

clean نظيف — dirty متسخ

fail يرسب/يفشل — succeed ينجح

Lesson 4

sell يبيع — buy يشترى

rich غنى — poor فقير

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
give	يعطى	gave	given
Lesson 4			
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3		
greet (v)	يحيى	to say hello
lodger (n)	نزيل/مستأجر (لغرفة بمنزل)	someone who pays to live in another person's house/someone who pays for a room in a house.
tenant (n)	مستأجر (لمنزل)	someone who pays to live in a house
pay (v)	يدفع	to give money for work someone has done

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like feseekh because it's ..... .
   a) salt b) salty c) healthy d) delicious
2. *Raya and Sakina* is my favourite ..... .
   a) play b) subject c) food d) sport
3. My father works in a ..... . It makes toys.
   a) school b) hospital c) charity d) factory

Answers ١) b ٢) a ٣) d

Language Notes

1 **experience** (خبرة) (عمل) اسم مفرد لا يُعد (لا تُجمع ولا يأتى قبلها أداة نكرة)

an experience (تجربة/موقف فى الحياة) (يمكن جمعها)

- I have experience in repairing computers.
- My father travels a lot. He has many experiences.

2 **help + inf. / to + inf.** يساعد

- My sister always helps me **do/to do** my homework.

3 **pleased** مسرور (أى يشعر بالسرور و السعادة)

pleasant سار/ممتع (أى يسبب الإعجاب و الفرحة)

- He was very pleased because he got high marks.
- Mohammed Salah is pleasant when he plays. We all like his style.
- The trip was pleasant.

4 **buy** تشترى شيئًا (أى يصبح ملكك)

pay for يدفع أموالاً مقابل خدمة

- I bought a new shirt last Friday.
- I paid L.E. 15 for a cup of coffee.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The park is a/an ..... place, with a bench to sit on.
a) pleased b) amazed c) pleasant d) surprised

2 My brother is looking for a job, but he hasn't got ..... yet.
a) experience b) an experience
c) experiences d) some experiences

3 He asked me to help him ..... a small model plane.
a) designed b) designing c) design d) to designing

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 c)

Lesson 3

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Do you have regular neighbourhood meetings?

2. Listen to people at a community meeting. Which of the forms of communication in Exercise 1 do they talk about? Why?

SB page 26





Man : Thank you all for coming along to the meeting[1]. I'm going to show you a page on the whiteboard. Can you all see it clearly?

Teen girl : What is the page from – is it a website?

Man : Yes, it's a website for the local community to share ideas, called a social network service[2] page. We're going to start one, too. Is anyone interested in helping?

Woman : It's a very good way to communicate with everyone – after all, not everyone can come to meetings. And it's much quicker and cheaper than delivering leaflets[3].

Teen boy : How do we start?

(1) اجتماع

(2) خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية

(3) منشورات

Post-listening question:

- How can a social network service help the local community?

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- How do you communicate with other people in your community?

3. Read the social[1] network service[2] page. Which of the messages are asking for help?

SB page 26

Community Matters

The kindness of strangers

Thanks to the kind person who helped my elderly neighbour[3] last week. He felt unwell, and someone kindly helped him to a bench[4] to sit on for a rest.



We need more trees!

A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. It will help with pollution[5] and also encourage more visitors to our town. Who is interested in[6] joining our project?



Computer repairs

Hi, neighbours – I have experience[7] in repairing computers and mobile phones. Give me a call if you need help!



Let's help those in need!

Please donate food to people who don't have enough. Volunteers[8] are also wanted to help deliver boxes.



Art class

The community centre is going to be closed on Saturday next week, from 4 pm – 7 pm, for an art class.



Graffiti

I was disappointed[9] to see the graffiti[10] on the walls of the town hall. This is a historic building[11]! What are we going to do about it?



(1) اجتماعي
(2) خدمة
(3) جار
(4) مقعد
(5) تلوث
(6) مهتم بـ
(7) خبرة
(8) متطوعون
(9) محبط
(10) رسومات على الجدران
(11) مبنى تاريخي

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. ( )
2. The community centre is going to be closed on Sunday next week. ( )

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- How can we help poor children?

2. Read and check your answers to Exercise 1. SB page 28

David Copperfield

by Charles Dickens





(1) مصنع
(2) مدير
(3) يحيي/يرحب بـ
(4) زائر
(5) مستأجر/نزيل
(6) يدفع
(7) أثاث

I was working in the factory[1] when one day, my manager[2] greeted[3] me.

'You have a visitor[4],' he said, 'This is Mr Micawber.'

'Pleased to meet you, David,' said the man. 'I'd like you to be my lodger[5].'

He took me to his house after work. It was as poor and old as he was. He lived there with his thin wife, their baby and two small children.

'I never thought that we'd need a lodger,' said Mrs Micawber. 'But we don't have enough money, you see.'

I was ten years old and I had no help from my family, but my money from the factory paid[6] for my food and room.

The Micawbers were very kind, but they were even poorer than me. One day, Mrs Micawber said, 'We have nothing to eat in the house!'

I tried to give her some money.

'I can't take this,' she said. 'But we have some things that we can sell. Can you help us?'

So I sold some of their old books and furniture[7]. I gave the money to Mrs Micawber, and she was able to cook us all a healthy meal.

Post-reading questions:
1. Why did the Micawbers want David to be their lodger?
2. In what ways did people in David's community help each other?

Life Skills

Try to help people in your community and remember to respect those who are different from us.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The final results will be put on the ..... .
   a) noticeboard b) note c) pavement d) diary
2. My car is in the garage for ....., so I go to work by taxi.
   a) actions b) damage c) repairs d) break
3. Dolphins use sound to ..... with each other.
   a) feed b) eat c) sleep d) communicate
4. I caught my neighbour's son writing ..... on our wall, but he ran away.
   a) fingerprint b) graffiti c) calligraphy d) handwriting
5. I hope you will have a ..... trip.
   a) pleased b) pleasant c) boring d) noisy
6. Tarek doesn't have any money, so I will ..... for his metro ticket. WB
   a) buy b) sell c) pay d) bay
7. He never passes without stopping to ..... hello.
   a) talk b) say c) tell d) speak
8. My mother asked me to ..... her a call if I'm going to be late.
   a) give b) have c) make d) spend
9. Don't worry about it, just try to ..... .
   a) fear b) relax c) die d) visit
10. If you don't work hard, you may ..... .
    a) feel b) fell c) pass d) fail
11. A ..... is someone who pays to live in a room in someone's house.
    a) lodger b) tenant c) manager d) seller
12. My uncle is a businessman and always has ..... to discuss important topics.
    a) ponds b) interviews c) meetings d) dreams
13. *David Copperfield* is a story ..... Charles Dickens.
    a) at b) in c) by d) into

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This train ..... is not very good. I won't travel by it again. I can't find fresh drinks.
a) conductor b) platform c) ticket d) service

2 They stopped and sat on a park ..... to have a rest.
a) beach b) bench c) coast d) sofa

3 To get a good job, you should have enough ..... for it.
a) experience b) experiment c) expert d) information

4 He was in ..... with 10 others for the job.
a) pollution b) experience c) environment d) competition

5 The castle is a ..... building.
a) historic b) history c) historian d) story

6 All students should ..... their teachers.
a) refuse b) encourage c) respect d) hare

7 I read an interesting article in the ..... newspaper of our town.
a) natural b) local c) general d) special

8 There were people at the entrance giving out ..... about their products.
a) branches b) papers c) leaves d) leaflets

9 When we arrived at my grandparents' house, they came outside to ..... us. WB
a) greet b) hit c) send d) push

10 The teacher will put a message about the new art class on the ..... . WB
a) note b) noticeboard c) branches d) benches

11 It was sunny, so we were surprised by the ..... of the forest. WB
a) illness b) darkness c) weakness d) sweetness

12 Fareed and Salah rearranged the ..... in the living room.
a) benches b) furniture c) leaves d) leaflets

13 He ..... the company three months ago.
a) joined b) worked c) shared d) greeted

(B) Language

be going to

Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + am/is/are / am not/isn't/aren't + going to + **inf.**

- I'm (not) going to **buy** a new car.
- Omar is(n't) going to **join** a boarding school.
- They are(n't) going to **fly** to London.

Usage الاستخدام

Use 'be going to' for future plans, decisions and intentions.

تستخدم للخطط والقرارات والنوايا المستقبلية.

- We're going to start our own social network service.
- The street is going to be closed on Saturday.

وهناك كلمات تدل على أنه نية مثل: decide يقرر / plan يخطط / intend ينوى

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No questions:

Is/Are + subject + going to + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** Is Adam going to **buy** another book? **B:** Yes, he is.
- **A:** Are you going to **donate** food for charities? **B:** Yes, I am.

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + is/are + subject + going to + **inf.** ...?

- What is Heba going to **do**?
- When are they going to **leave** school?

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We ..... (visit) the museum. We intended to do that.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going to visit) لوجود intended الدالة على النية.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Is) your parents going to travel to Hurghada?
2. We decided that we are ..... (go) to go on a boat trip.
3. How are you going ..... (solve) this problem?

Answers 1 Are 2 going 3 to solve

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 ..... going to have a holiday this year?
a) Are you b) You are c) Do you d) You do

2 He is ..... study history at the university.
a) going not to b) going to c) going d) go to

3 ..... to open a new supermarket here?
a) They are going b) Going they
c) They going d) Are they going

4 My uncle ..... a present for his wife as he planned to give a party to celebrate her birthday.
a) isn't going to buy b) is going buy
c) is going to buy d) buys

5 Nada has decided not to come with us. She ..... go out with Sara instead.
a) is going b) is going to c) going d) isn't going to

6 Is your cousin ..... move to another house?
a) going to b) go to c) go d) going

7 **A:** What are your plans for the future? **B:** I ..... a famous actor!"
a) am b) will be c) am going to be d) am being

8 Our computer didn't work yesterday, so we ..... a new one soon.
a) are going to buy b) are buying
c) buys d) buy

9 Dad has made a decision. He ..... us to Rome this year.
a) will take b) is taking c) takes d) is going to take

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Look at that man on the bridge! He is going ..... (jump)!
2 I ..... (buy) some new clothes. My old ones are too small.
3 ..... (going/you) watch the new play tonight?

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Mr Samy has decided to visit Aswan next week. (is going to)
.....

2 Sara planned to spend the weekend in Alexandria. (going)
.....

3 Adel is going to spend the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh. (intends)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father ..... travel by air. He's decided to take the train.
   a) is going to b) wouldn't c) isn't going to d) will
2. **A:** It's Diana's birthday tomorrow! **B:** What ..... buy her?"
   a) are you going b) are you going to c) will d) you will
3. Where are you ..... spend your next summer holiday?
   a) intend to b) going c) gone to d) going to
4. We ..... the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday as planned.
   a) visit b) will visit c) visited d) are going to visit
5. What ..... your brother going to do tomorrow?
   a) are b) is c) does d) will
6. Hassan doesn't want to go to the match. He ..... paint the living room.
   a) will b) is going c) going to d) is going to
7. I am going to ..... my homework after I finish dinner.
   a) do b) doing c) done d) did
8. **A:** There's no milk. **B:** I know. I ..... get some from the shop.
   a) am b) will c) 'm going to d) am going
9. ..... going to Rome this year, are you?
   a) You are b) You aren't c) Are you d) Aren't you

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1. I am going read David Copperfield this summer. (.....)
2. Nelly is going to come to your party? (.....)
3. I go to the library. I've planned to study all day. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Omar is going to learn French. (decided)
   .....
2. Sandy's father decided to drive his family to Hurghada next weekend. (going)
   .....
3. The engineer intends to build a new plane. (going to)
   .....

(C) Skills

Write it right

How to write about what you are going to do next weekend

كيفية الكتابة عما ستفعله فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادمة

- Where are you going to go?
- Who are you going to go with?
- How are you going to go there?
- What are you going to do?
- Why do you like this place?
- What activities are you going to do there?

Writing tips

Think about how you want to structure your paragraph. This will make your paragraph more coherent and easier to read.

فكر كيف ستقوم باستخدام القواعد اللغوية فى الفقرة. هذا سيجعل فقرتك أكثر ترابطًا وأسهل عند القراءة.

Example

"My plan for the weekend"

I'm looking forward to spending a happy weekend. We usually discuss what we are going to do with each other. My parents suggest a place and we tell them our opinions. Finally, we choose the best place to spend a good time. This weekend is special because it's also my birthday, so I'm careful to choose a place we won't forget. We are going to visit our uncle on his farm to enjoy the fresh air. we are going to travel by train. We are going to stay for three days there. I like going there because I like playing in the fields and enjoying the countryside. I'm waiting for this weekend to come soon.

Check Point: Write an email of 110 words to your friend Eslam to tell him about your plans for the summer holiday. Your name's Ahmed. Your email address is ahmed@student.com. Your friend's email address is eslam@yahoo.com.

Lessons 3&4 General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He felt ..... this morning, so he didn't go to his work.
a) unwell b) well
c) healthy d) untidy

2 When you find something that doesn't belong to you, put it into the ..... and found box.
a) lost b) missed
c) disappeared d) hidden

3 Some people find it difficult to ask ..... help.
a) of b) about c) to d) for

4 Thanks ..... our great scientists, we live a comfortable life.
a) for b) to c) about d) by

5 The light suddenly went out, leaving us in ..... .
a) kind b) kindness c) darkness d) dark

6 They clapped their hands to ..... him.
a) hurt b) welcome c) say d) talk

7 She is still ..... after her illness.
a) ill b) weak
c) strong d) weakness

8 **A:** Why are you turning on the TV? **B:** I ..... the match.
a) am going to watch b) will watch
c) am watching d) watch

9 I'm going ..... the dentist's tomorrow.
a) visiting b) visit
c) to visiting d) to visit

10 The friends ..... in tonight. They have decided to spend some time with us.
a) are staying b) are going to stay
c) will stay d) stay

2 Fill in the gaps:

Next weekend, will be full of great events. Volunteers (1)..... to clean up the park at 9 am. Food market (2)..... from 8 am to 2 pm. Lots of people are (3)..... to sit by the river to enjoy the fresh air. The handball competition starts at 2 pm at the sports centre. A famous architect (4)..... going to talk at the new museum at 4 pm.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Next summer, I ..... (going/travel) to England.
2 They ..... (going) play tennis this afternoon.
3 The volunteers are going to ..... (cleaning) up the park. WB

4 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Do you intend to play football next weekend? (Are)

.....

2 She's decided to see a doctor for her bad back pain. (is going to)

.....

3 What do you intend to study next year? (going)

.....

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"What you are going to do next weekend" WB

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB Pages 29 - 31
WB Pages 90 - 92

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

adult (n/adj)	بالغ	introduction (n)	مقدمة
expressions (n)	تعبيرات	pleasure (n)	سعادة/بهجة
greetings (n)	تحيات	suitable (adj)	مناسب
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم		

Lesson 6

attract (ed) (v)	يجذب	happiness (n)	السعادة
attraction (n)	جذب	However, (adv/conj)	ومع ذلك
builder (n)	عامل بناء	In addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
castle (n)	قلعة	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	library (n)	مكتبة
contact (ed) (v)	يتصل بـ	network page (n)	صفحة الشبكة
contrasting (adj)	متناقض	result (n)	نتيجة
display (ed) (v)	يعرض	summary (n)	ملخص
exchange (d) (v)	يتبادل	To conclude,	فى الختام
extra (adj)	إضافى	To start with,	لنبدأ بـ
Firstly, (adv)	أولاً	To summarise,	وخلاصة القول
Furthermore, (adv)	علاوة على ذلك	warmly (adv)	بحفاوة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

football team (n)	فريق كرة القدم
situation (n)	موقف

Lesson 6

add (ed) (v)	يضيف
as soon as	بمجرد أن
broken (adj)	مكسور
building (n)	مبنى
child/children (n)	طفل/أطفال
complete (d) (v)	يكمل
each other (pro)	بعضهم البعض
ending (n)	نهاية/خاتمة
flat (n)	شقة
friendly (adj)	ودود
Heisa (n)	جزيرة هيسا النوبية
helpful (adj)	متعاون/مساعد
improve (d) (v)	يحسن
need (ed) (v)	يحتاج
paint (ed) (v)	يدهن/يلون
perhaps (adv)	ربما
plan (ned) (v)	يخطط
rubbish (n)	قمامة
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
That's why	ولهذا السبب
tourist attraction	مكان جذب سياحى
wonderful (adj)	رائع
work (n)	عمل
writer (n)	كاتب

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

give reasons for — يعطى مبررات لـ

Lesson 6

clean up ▶ the rubbish	ينظف القمامة
get ▶ an idea	لديه فكرة
go ▶ windsurfing	يذهب لركوب الأمواج
have ▶ a rest	يأخذ راحة
say ▶ thank you to	يقول شكرًا لـ
walk on ▶ top of the castle wall	يمشى على قمة حائط القلعة
work on ▶ a project	يعمل فى مشروع

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 6

at a meeting	فى الاجتماع	introduce to	يقدم لـ
by the front door to	بجوار الباب الأمامى لـ	look for	يبحث عن
far from	بعيد من/عن	problem with	مشكلة فى
in fact	فى الحقيقة	sit down on	يجلس على
in the future	فى المستقبل	walk along	يمشى على طول

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 5

above	فوق	below	أسفل	formal	رسمى	informal	غير رسمى

Lesson 6

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود	suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 6

Present	Past simple	Past participle
become يصبح	became	become
beat يهزم	beat	beaten

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 6

Firstly, أولاً / To start with, لنبدأ بـ	introduce the reasons for the project
Furthermore, علاوة على ذلك / In addition, بالإضافة إلى ذلك	add extra information
However, ومع ذلك / , but ولكن	give contrasting information
To conclude, فى الختام / To summarise, وخلاصة القول	write a conclusion

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a problem ..... my laptop. It doesn't work.
   a) for b) about c) to d) with
2. We need some ..... to improve the walls of the house.
   a) cleaners b) buildings c) builders d) writers
3. I'd like to ..... my friend Amira to my mother.
   a) invite b) beat c) introduce d) become

Answers ٣) ج ٢) ج ١) ب

Language Notes

Let + مفعول + inf. يسمح/يدع

1. • Let me **say** how much we all love our Children's Library.

فاعل + مضارع بسيط منفى + anymore لم يعد

2. • The children don't like the library anymore.

الشىء/المفعول + need(s) + v + ing يحتاج أن

الفاعل + need(s) + to + inf. + الشىء/المفعول يحتاج أن

3. • The library needs **painting**.
   • We need to **paint** the library.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let me ..... the problem with you.
   a) to discuss b) discussing c) discuss d) to discussing
2. Our car needs ..... .
   a) cleaning b) to cleaning c) to clean d) clean
3. He ..... his bike anymore.
   a) didn't ride b) rode c) rides d) doesn't ride

Answers ٤) ب ٣) ج ٢) ب ١) ج

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- What do you say when you introduce someone to another?

3. *Listen and match the conversations 1–3 with the pictures a–c.* SB page 29

Narrator One

Fares (B) : Hi, there, Omar!
Omar (M) : Hello, Fares!
Fares : Do you know my cousin, Adam?
Omar : No, I don't.
Fares : Adam, meet Omar. Omar, meet Adam.
Omar : Nice to meet you, Adam!
Adam : Nice to meet you, too.

b



(1) سعادة/بهجة
(2) يقدم
(3) حي

Narrator Two

Samira (F) : Hi, there Ola!
Ola (F) : Hello, Samira! Have you met Randa? She's just started working at our office.
Samira : No, we haven't met. It's a pleasure[1] to meet you.
Randa : Pleased to meet you, too, Samira!

a



Narrator Three

Sara (F) : Good morning. I'd like to introduce[2] myself. I'm Sara. I'm your new neighbour.
Lamar (F) : Pleased to meet, you, Sara! I'm Lamar, and this my mother, Mrs Mansour.
Sara : Pleased to meet you both.
Mrs Mansour : It's a pleasure to meet you, too, Sara. Welcome to our neighbourhood[3]!

c



Post-listening question: - Has Samira ever met Randa?

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- Do you talk to all people the same way?

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2. WB page 90



(1) يقدم
(2) جار
(3) مسرور/سعيد
(4) ابنة

A F

Mrs Laila : Good morning, class. I'd like to introduce(1) myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.
Class : **Good morning**, Mrs Laila.

B F

Father : Heba, **I'd like you to** meet our new neighbour(2), Mr Baher.
Heba : Pleased(3) to meet you, Mr Baher.
Father : **This is** my daughter(4), Heba.
Mr Baher : Pleased to meet you too, Heba.

C I

Hamdi : **Hi**, Basel. Do you know my friend, Imad?
Basel : No, I don't.
Hamdi : Basel, **meet** Imad. We're in the same football team.
Basel : Nice to meet you, Imad.
Imad : Nice to meet you, **too**.

Post-listening question: - Mention two different ways to greet people.

Lesson 6 **Reading Text**

Pre-reading question: - Do you have historic places in your town?

2. *Read the message in the social network service page, and answer the questions.* *SB page 30*

Firstly[1], let me say how much we all love our Children's Library. However[2], it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite you to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El Saada community project. You can see a photo of their work above. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in 'colours of happiness'. We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore[3], the library will become a tourist attraction.

To conclude[4], we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project. If you are interested, please contact me!

(1) أولاً
(2) ومع ذلك
(3) علاوة على ذلك
(4) لكى نختم



Lesson 6 **Reading Text**

1. *Complete the online message with these expressions.* *WB page 91*

Firstly, let me say how proud[1] we are of the castle[2] in our town. **However**, it now needs some work. People love walking on top of the castle walls[3], **but** some of them are dangerous. Also, some people leave rubbish inside the castle.



(1) فخور
(2) قلعة
(3) حوائط
(4) يطور
(5) عمال بناء
(6) جذب سياحى

At our community meeting, we decided to improve[4] the castle. We are going to get some builders[5] to repair the walls. **Furthermore**, children at the school are going to help clean up the rubbish. **To conclude**, we think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a tourist attraction[6].

Post-reading question: - Suggest other solutions to the mentioned problems.

Lesson 7

Reading Text

1. Complete the text from the words in the box.

SB page 31

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking along the pavement (1) when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm **elderly**, you see. A young woman saw me and **greeted** me warmly. She encouraged (2) me to sit down on a bench (3) and have a rest. It was so wonderful to be treated with such kindness (4). That's why I'm so happy to live in this neighbourhood (5). Our community (6) is so kind and helpful!



(1) رصيف شارع
(2) شجع
(3) مقعد
(4) لطف
(5) الحي
(6) مجتمع

Project

Work in groups. Do a survey to find out other students' opinions about their community.

1. What topics do you want their opinions to be about?

.....

2. What questions are you going to ask to find out their opinions? Look at the survey on page 22 for ideas.

.....

3. Do your survey.

.....

4. Exchange your survey with another group. Answer the questions.

.....

5. Write a summary of the results of your survey. What do most people like or want to improve about the community?

.....

6. Display your survey results in the classroom for everyone to read.

.....

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She hasn't got any ..... shoes for the wedding.
   a) kind b) adult c) disabled d) suitable
2. My brother is 19 years old. He's a/an ..... .
   a) elderly b) afraid c) adult d) strange
3. Allow me to ..... myself.
   a) introduce b) offer c) produce d) pollute
4. Money doesn't always bring ..... .
   a) weakness b) happiness c) sweetness d) darkness
5. I told the police about my bag and they will ..... me if they find it.
   a) introduce b) respect c) communicate d) contact
6. They welcomed us ..... . They liked our visit.
   a) warmly b) badly c) angrily d) nervously
7. Can you give us a ..... of what you are doing now?
   a) summary b) poster c) leaflet d) reason
8. Be careful! You may find yourself in a bad ..... if you lose control of the car.
   a) summary b) review c) message d) situation
9. We use ..... language when we talk to our friends.
   a) informal b) formal c) unusual d) strange
10. I had a little problem ..... my car, but I repaired it.
    a) in b) on c) at d) with
11. I found the ..... of her story very exciting. Its ending was great.
    a) invitation b) situation c) introduction d) conclusion
12. He is a great engineer. In ....., he is a great writer.
    a) conclusion b) however c) addition d) furthermore
13. It's ..... to meet you, Ola. I hope we will meet again.
    a) pleasure b) measure c) leisure d) treasure
14. Give me your ..... for coming late.
    a) causes b) situations c) reasons d) events

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They ..... greetings and sat down to have lunch.
a) encouraged b) exchanged c) moved d) discussed

2 A variety of books are ..... in the library.
a) sent b) became c) delivered d) displayed

3 Argentina ..... Brazil one-nil in the final of Copa America.
a) invited b) finished c) planned d) beat

4 He always feels lonely when he is ..... home.
a) above b) below c) near d) far from

5 They usually ..... windsurfing at weekends.
a) beat b) make c) go d) take

6 We started to work ..... our community project months ago.
a) on b) at c) for d) in

7 Everyone likes to visit the castle. It is a tourist ..... .
a) attraction b) production c) conclusion d) collection

8 I can't ..... this task alone.
a) stay b) sleep c) compare d) complete

9 I need to ..... my English to get a good job.
a) remove b) improve c) attract d) fear

10 He told me a ..... story. It was cool.
a) bad b) horrible c) terrible d) wonderful

11 What is the ..... of the match?
a) result b) reason c) cause d) event

12 I would like to ..... by saying that I enjoy your magazine.
a) complete b) conclude c) beat d) consist

13 If you need any ..... help, just call me.
a) alone b) natural c) extra d) final



(B) Skills



1. Speaking

Using formal and informal introductions and greetings

استخدام التقديم والتحية الرسمية وغير الرسمية

Formal رسمى	**Informal** غير رسمى
use formal language with people you don't know	use informal language with family and friends

A) Greetings التحية

- Hello, Mr Reda. مرحبًا سيد رضا.	- Hi! أهلا.
- Good morning. صباح الخير.	- Hi, there. أهلا/مرحبًا.

B) Introductions التقديم

- I'd like to introduce myself. أود أن أقدم نفسى.	- I'm Adam. أنا آدم.
- I'd like you to meet my friend, Habiba. أود أن أقدم صديقتى، حبيبة.	- Adam, meet Omar. آدم، قابل عمر.
- I'd like to introduce my friend, Nader. أود أن أقدم صديقى، نادر.	- This is my friend, Basma. هذه صديقتى بسمة.
	- Do you know my friend, Imad? هل تعرف صديقى عماد؟
	- Meet my friend, Donia. قابل صديقتى دنيا.
	- Have you been introduced to my mother? هل تم تقديمك لوالدتى؟
	- Have you met Mr Mostafa Morsy? هل قابلت السيد مصطفى مرسى؟

C) Greetings for the first time تحية لأول مرة

- Nice to meet you. من اللطف أن أقابلك.	والرد يكون بـ:
- Pleased to meet you. سعدت بلقائك.	- Nice to meet you, too. من اللطف أن أقابلك، أيضًا.
- It's a pleasure to meet you. من السعادة أن أقابلك.	- Pleased to meet you, too. سعدت بلقائك، أيضًا.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir introduces his friend Magdi to Nader.

Samir : Hi, Nader. How are you today?

Nader : (1)..... .

Samir : Are you going to do anything special?

Nader : No, (2)..... . But I'm thinking of watching something on TV.

Samir : (3)..... my friend, Magdi?

Nader : No, I don't.

Samir : Nader, (4)..... . We're in the same football team.

Nader : Nice to meet you, Magdi.

Magdi : (5)..... .

Samir : Let's go to the club together.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You meet your friend on your way to school.

.....

2 You greet your mother in the morning.

.....

3 You introduce your cousin Sami to your friend.

.....

4 Your friend introduces Sameer to you.

.....

5 You meet a tourist at the airport.

.....

6 You're introduced to a new friend.

.....

Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Father introduces his neighbour to his daughter.

Father : At last. I'm home.
Heba : Did you have a good day at work?
Father : Sure. Everything was going right.
Heba : I'm very happy you are here with us.
Father : Heba, (1)....., Mr Baher.
Heba : (2)....., Mr Baher.
Father : (3)..... my daughter, Heba.
Mr Baher : (4)..... .
Heba : (5)....., too.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You greet your teacher in the morning.
.....
2. Introduce your sister to your friend Nagwa.
.....
3. You meet your neighbour for the first time.
.....
4. Your cousin introduces his/her friend to you.
.....
5. You would like your friend to meet your cousin Nader.
.....
6. Your nephew introduces his friend to you. Greet him.
.....



2. Write it right

How to write a social network message about a community problem

كيفية كتابة رسالة تواصل اجتماعى حول مشكلة مجتمعية

- Describe your neighbourhood.
- Mention if you love it or not.
- Say why you love/don't love your neighbourhood.
- Talk about its problems.
- Suggest solutions for its problems.
- Ask others to help you improve it.

Writing tips

Check your paragraph for spelling and grammar. Once you have finished writing, it is essential that you re-read your paragraph two or three times to check for misspelled words and poor grammar.

- راجع المفردات والقواعد اللغوية لفقرتك:
بمجرد الانتهاء من الكتابة، من الضرورى القيام بإعادة قراءة فقرتك مرتين أو ثلاث مرات للتأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية أو قواعد لغوية ضعيفة.

To : asmaa@gmail.com
From : shahd@student.com
Subject : My neighbourhood

Dear Asmaa,

Firstly, let me say how much we all love our neighbourhood. The houses are all of great importance. Some of the houses are old and built in great style. However, they became dirty and full of graffiti. Now, they need painting. In our community meeting, we decided to improve these buildings and plant trees in front of each house. Furthermore, we need to put rubbish bins to keep the area clean. I encouraged all young people to help with our community project which takes a few months to finish. As soon as we complete our task, our neighbourhood becomes very attractive and it may be a tourist attraction. To conclude, we are still cleaning the area. So, we are looking for more and more volunteers to help us complete the project. Write soon.

Yours, Shahd

Check Point: Write an email of 110 words to your friend Hossam to tell him about your plans for your neighbourhood. Your name is Kareem. Your email address is kareem@yahoo.com. Your friend's email is hossam@student.com.

Lessons 5&6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ghada introduces Amal to her friend Hadeer.

Hadeer : Hello, Ghada. How are you?

Ghada : Fine, thank you. (1) ..... ?

Hadeer : Fine, too.

Ghada : (2) ..... ?

Hadeer : Good morning, Amal.

Amal : (3) ..... .

Hadeer : When did you become friends?

Ghada : (4) ..... .

Hadeer : Nice to meet you, Amal.

Amal : (5) ..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You see Samira for the first time. Greet her.

.....

2. Introduce Nada to Dina.

.....

3. You are greeted by your friend before the first lesson.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is open every day. I think I would like to read a book there to relax.
   a) castle b) library c) museum d) bookshop
2. Why don't you text all your friends and ..... them to the party, too?
   a) deliver b) offer c) invent d) invite
3. We should improve many places in Egypt to ..... more tourists.
   a) welcome b) lie c) attract d) invite
4. Finally, to ....., this is a useful book for all children of all ages.
   a) begin with b) conclude c) start with d) summary

5 He works as a/an ..... . He uses bricks in his work.
a) doctor b) officer c) waiter d) builder

6 The screen can ..... simple photos as well as texts.
a) play b) replay c) display d) replay

7 I didn't expect him to become a successful ..... . He earned a lot of money from his books.
a) footballer b) actor c) artist d) writer

8 The film I watched yesterday was really ..... . I don't recommend it for you.
a) bore b) bored c) boring d) born

9 It's arranged. We're ..... next Monday.
a) met b) meet c) meets d) meeting

10 What are you going ..... when you finish school?
a) to doing b) to do c) do d) doing

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Next weekend, I am going ..... (visit) my uncle in Minya.
2 The children ..... (going) buy ice cream.
3 Alaa is going to ..... (meeting) me at the park.

5 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Nada to tell her about a community project to improve the park.
Your name is Dina. Your email address is dina@gmail.com. Your friend's email is nada@yahoo.com.

Unit 3 Review



(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

accessible	يمكن الوصول إليه
adult	بالغ
affect (ed)	يؤثر على
attract (ed)	يجذب
castle	قلعة
communicate (d)	يتواصل
community	مجتمع
contact (ed)	يتصل بـ
deliver (ed)	يسلم
decent	كريم/لائق
disabled	معاق
display (ed)	يعرض
education	التعليم
donate (d)	يتبرع
encourage (d)	يشجع
equal	مساوٍ
exchange (d)	يتبادل
experience	خبرة
facilities	تسهيلات/خدمات/مرافق
festival	مهرجان
furniture (n)	أثاث
graffiti	الرسم على الجدران
hero/heroes	بطل/أبطال
improve (d)	يحسن
interview (ed)	يجرى مقابلة مع
introduce (d)	يقدم
initiative	مبادرة
leaflets	منشورات
leisure	وقت فراغ/ترفيه
lodger (n)	مستأجر (لغرفة بمنزل)
meetings	اجتماعات
neighbourhood	حي
opportunity	فرصة
pavement	رصيف (شارع)
pleasant	سار/جذاب/ممتع
pleasure	سعادة/بهجة
public services	خدمات عامة
repairs	إصلاحات
respect (ed)	يحترم
result	نتيجة
social network service	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية
stranger	غريب
suitable	مناسب
summary	ملخص
survey	دراسة/استبيان
tenant (n)	مستأجر (لمنزل)
tourist attraction	مكان جذب سياحي
transport	المواصلات/النقل
treat (ed)	يعامل
volunteer (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع

(B) Language

1 The present continuous: زمن المضارع المستمر:

Subject (الفاعل) + am/is/are + v + ing

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية النهائية. (مستقبل مرتب له مسبقًا).

- We're starting a project next month.
- They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting.

2 Adjectives ending in *-ing* or *-ed*

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ -ing لوصف الاسم. (أى مسبب الصفة للآخرين).

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ -ed لوصف الشعور. (أى عند الشعور بالصفة).

- The **book** is interesting. **I** am interested in reading it.
- The handball **match** was exciting. **I** was excited to watch the match.

3 be going to

الفاعل + am/is/are + going to + inf.

تستخدم للخطط والقرارات والنوايا المستقبلية.

We're going to **start** our own social network service.

(C) Skills

Speaking

Using formal and informal introductions and greetings

Formal رسمى	Informal غير رسمى
A) Greetings التحية	
- Hello. - Good morning.	- Hi!
B) Introductions التقديم	
- I'd like to introduce myself. - I'd like you to meet my friend, Habiba.	- I'm Adam. - Adam, meet Omar. - This is my friend, Basma.
C) Greetings for the first time تحية لأول مرة	
- Nice to meet you. - Pleased to meet you.	والرد يكون بـ: - Nice to meet you, too. - Pleased to meet you, too.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 3

أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Rana : What do you think are the best things about your own community?

Alaa : .....

B) Mohammed : .....

Amany : Nice to meet you, Jylan.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. I decided to join a community	**a)** the community centre was closed.
2. I was disappointed to hear that	**b)** This is Mrs Laila.
3. We're going to paint the walls, which	**c)** project which aims to help the poor.
4. This will make our library look exciting.	**d)** I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.
5. I'd like to introduce myself.	**e)** Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.
	f) are covered in graffiti and old posters.

Answers: **1.** ( ) **2.** ( ) **3.** ( ) **4.** ( ) **5.** ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about TEN (10) sentences on:

"A community problem"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 3

Based on Unit 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam introduces Nawal to her friend Nourhan.

Mariam : Hello, Nourhan. Good morning.

Nourhan : Hello, Mariam. How are you?

Mariam : I'm fine, thank you. (1)..... our new friend Nawal?

Nourhan : (2)..... . We didn't meet before.

Mariam : (3)..... meet Nawal.

Nourhan : Pleased to see you, Nawal.

Nawal : (4)....., too.

Nourhan : (5).....?

Nawal : I'm from Tanta, but now I live in Cairo.

Mariam : I'm so happy to be with you both.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your partner about the people who made differences in his community.

.....

2 You're at school and meet a new friend.

.....

3 You introduce your friend to your uncle.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the last decade, the culture of volunteering and doing community projects has grown in many different parts of Egypt. The best example of that is Magdi Yacoub, who tries his best to help sick children with heart problems. Greenish is another example for that. It concentrates on the power of the youth, Greenish is an environmental movement that focuses on increasing society's awareness of environment matters and pushing communities towards living in a clean place. They help design and deliver educational content about the environment to different schools, companies and universities. In addition, they arrange cleaning events in many communities to improve

an environmental way of living. One of their achievements includes the Qusseir Clean Up Project. It succeeded in collecting more than 5000 waste items from the beach. They are also partners with 'Bassita' in the 'VeryNile' project that aims to remove all waste and trash from the Nile.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 What is the best title for this text?

.....

2 What age does Greenish concentrate on?

.....

3 What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 Magdi Yacoub helps children with ..... problems.
a) eye b) ear c) lung d) heart

5 Greenish delivers educational content to ..... .
a) schools b) companies c) universities d) a, b and c

6 Greenish managed to collect waste from the ..... on its project the Qusseir Clean Up.
a) beach b) sea c) Nile d) all above

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The charity ..... a survey of people's need.
a) did b) made c) swam d) saw

2 Did you ..... my message to your father?
a) encourage b) order c) offer d) deliver

3 The Decent Life Initiative aims to improve the public ..... .
a) noticeboard b) reserve c) surface d) services

4 Good parents never ..... their children badly.
a) paint b) fear c) offer d) treat

5 We have a new ..... . He's a student from Lebanon who is studying here and his room is next to mine.
a) manager b) robber
c) lodger d) interviewer

6 Watch how you can ..... a difference to your environment.
a) do b) take c) give d) make

WB

7 Twenty-five percent of all the ..... used in the restaurant is generated by the sun.
a) electric b) electrician
c) electronic d) electricity

8 Do you know that Tamer ..... abroad next month?
a) will go b) is going to c) is going d) goes

9 I ..... to the country. Do you think it's a good idea?
a) will move b) moving
c) move d) am going to move

10 My new job is extremely ....., but I like it so much.
a) pleased b) excited c) tired d) tiring

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 That is really an ..... (excited) film.
2 They are going ..... (spend) the weekend at home.
3 I am ..... (travel) to London.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I will be very surprised if she does well in her test. (It's)
.....
2 He's planned to visit Paris next month. (is going)
.....
3 He's arranged to join a sports club next summer holiday. (joining)
.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Equal opportunities for boys and girls" WB

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Unit 3 Think and Create

Write a paragraph about one of these topics:

1. The community you live in

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What do you think are the best things about your own community?
- Are there facilities for the elderly and disabled people? Are people doing anything to improve the facilities?
- Which people have made a difference in your community?
- How have they done this?
- What are the problems that you face in your community?
- How do you help in solving them?



2. New habits that would help your community

Use these guiding points to help you:

- How would you encourage others to change their bad habits?
- Are there any habits that benefit the community? Mention some of them and how they help in the community.
- Which habits do you encourage people to have?



Tips

1 ➤ A suitable title
2 ➤ An introduction
3 ➤ Main ideas and information
4 ➤ Resources

Review A Units 1, 2 & 3



Review A

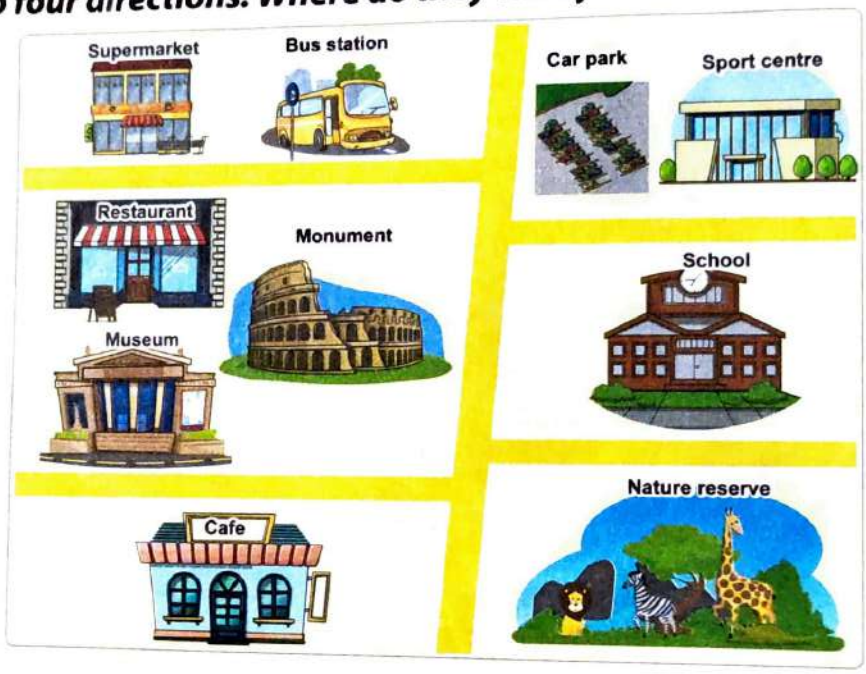
SB Pages 32 & 33
WB Pages 93 & 94

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How do you get to the nearest shop?

1. Listen to four directions. Where do they take you to? SB page 32



Narrator: 1

Voice: From the bus station, go straight on and walk past the monument. Then, turn right and it is opposite the museum.

Narrator: 2

Voice: From the bus station, go straight on and then take the second road on the left. It's on the left, opposite the nature reserve.

Narrator: 3

Voice: From the supermarket, walk past the bus station and turn right. Go straight on and it's on the corner, opposite the café.

Narrator: 4

Voice: From the restaurant, walk past the monument then turn right at the monument. Then take the first road on the left. It's on the left, next to the car park.

Post-listening question: - Where is the nature reserve?

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Did you visit the Museum of Natural Science before?

3. Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. *SB page 32*

Museum of Natural Science



Last year, there **was** an amazing exhibition of sea animals at the Museum of Natural Science. While visitors **were walking** around the exhibition, they could also watch videos and listen to the sounds of the sea. Next year, another exhibition **is going to tell** visitors about animal life in the desert.

Many people **think** that the desert **doesn't have** much life in it. This exhibition **is going to show** that lots of animals live there, if you know where to look.

The exhibition **opens** on the 5th March. Tickets **are** on sale now from the museum or online.

Post-reading question:

Complete:

1. The videos of these animals were ..... .
2. The snakes in the desert look ..... .

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What do you know about the Egyptian Railways Museum?

1. *Complete the text with these words.* WB page 93



Good morning, everyone. I'd like to **introduce** myself. I'm Judy and I work for *See the Best of Cairo*. Today, you're going to visit two places. They are not the most **famous** ones, but we think they are the **best!** Why? Because they are **neither** full of tourists (1) nor expensive, but they have some very **interesting** things to see. Firstly, in the morning, we're taking you to the Egyptian Railways Museum (2). It **opens** at 9 am. Here you'll find trains but also some other historical (3) forms of transport (4), including planes. The museum is **next** to Cairo train station. Then, **at** about 2 pm, we're going to the House of Gamal Al-Din Al-Dahabi. This is one of the **oldest** houses in the city, built in the seventeenth century (5). It has beautiful windows, doors and even a fountain (6). We know you won't be **bored** in **either** of these places!

(1) سياح
(2) متحف سكك حديد مصر
(3) تاريخى
(4) النقل
(5) قرن
(6) نافورة

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. Both places are expensive to visit. ( )
2. The House of Gamal Al-Din Al-Dahabi is open in the afternoon. ( )

تطبيق الأضواء
ذاكر دروسك الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال
فيديوهات شرح الدروس.
حمل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال
www.aladwaa.com

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever done voluntary work?

2. *Read the texts about two teenagers. How do they want to help the community?*

SB page33

Tarek : I'm really excited about this week as I'm going to start my new volunteering job! My basketball team are going to play basketball with some disabled children and teach them about the game. I love children (I have three younger brothers and sisters) so I think it will be really fun. I'm happy I can volunteer with my friends, too. I think it is important that people help their community.



Judy : My friend and I are looking for some volunteer work. We want to help elderly people or young children. We both like little children! We are going to ask at local community centres about reading to elderly people and local schools about helping young children to read. We read a lot in our spare time but we want to do something useful for other people.



Post-reading question:

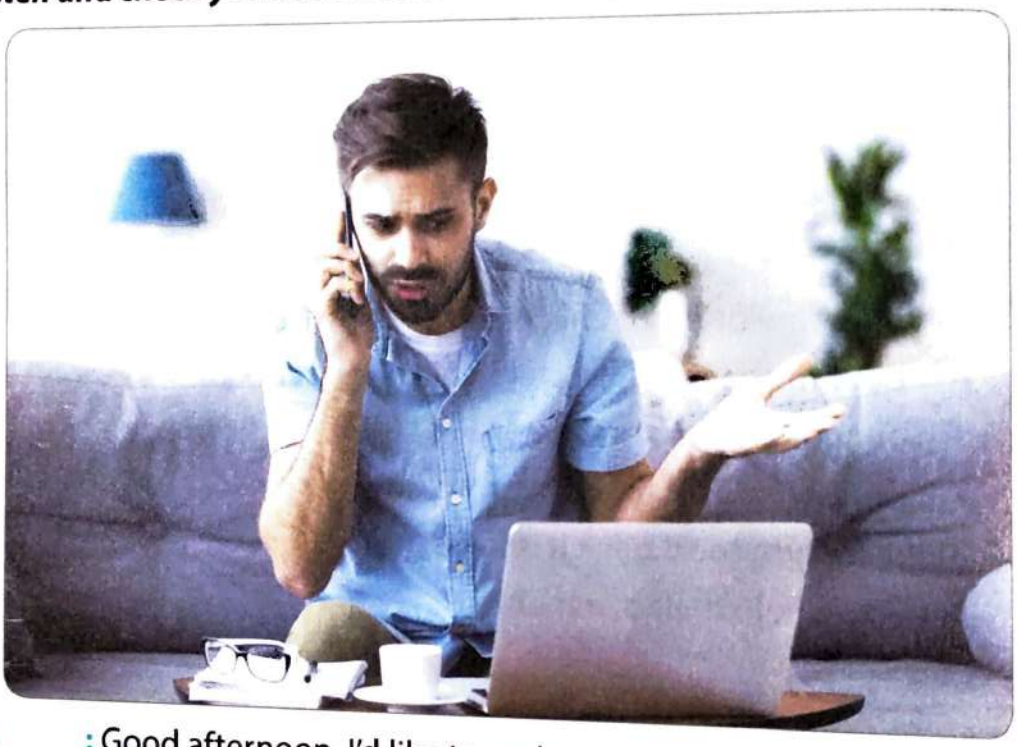
- How can Tarek and Judy help their community?

Lesson 2

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Do you prefer online shopping? Why/Why not?

6. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 5, then role-play the dialogue.



Man : Good afternoon, I'd like to make a complaint.
Assistant : What's the problem?
Man : I ordered something from your website but it hasn't arrived.
Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. What did you order?
Man : A black kettle.
Assistant : A black kettle? Why don't you come to our shop? We have one here. You don't have to pay anything more.
Man : Thank you. Where is your shop?
Assistant : It's next to the museum. From the station, turn right and walk past the clothes shop. We are on the left.
Man : What time do you open?
Assistant : We open from 8 am to 4 pm every day except Friday.

Post-listening question: - What's the man's complaint?

Practice A

Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is at a clothes shop.

Assistant : Good morning, can I help you?
Mona : I'd like to buy some clothes but I would like you to help me.
Assistant : What do you have in mind?
Mona : (1)..... a skirt or a dress.
Assistant : (2).....?
Mona : I like bright colours, like red or, pink.
Assistant : What size are you?
Mona : (3)..... .
Assistant : So, (4).....? Oh, it fits you!
Mona : Yes, it fits me. (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend asks you to give him the directions to the new restaurant.

.....

2 The shopkeeper asks you about your T-shirt size.

.....

3 You ask your friend about the facilities his/her community has.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The story of *David Copperfield* is told in the first person by a middle-aged David Copperfield, who is looking back on his life. David is born in Blunderstone, six months after his father's death. He lives with his mother and her housekeeper, Clara Peggotty at Clara's brother's house in Yarmouth. David learns that his mother has married the cruel Mr Edward Murdstone. David is sent to a boarding school run by the cruel Mr Creakle. David's mother dies shortly after giving birth to a son, who also dies. David doesn't return to school, and at the age of 10 he is sent to work at Murdstone's factory in London. He lives at the home of Mr and Mrs Micawber. Unfortunately, Mr Micawber is sent to prison. David runs away to Dover to find his aunt, Miss Betsey Trotwood, and she takes him in. Miss Betsey arranges for David to go to a school run by Doctor Strong. After David

completes his schooling, he goes to visit Peggotty. After some time, he returns to London and begins working for Doctor Strong as a secretary. He marries a woman called Agnes.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 Where does David live after his father's death?

.....

2 Does David complete his school after his mother's death?

.....

3 What do you think of Mr Edward Murdstone? Why?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 Who is the woman David marries? - ..... .

a) Micawber b) Betsey c) Agnes d) Clara

5 David leaves Mr Micawber because he is sent to ..... .

a) prison b) hospital c) school d) his office

6 Miss Betsey is David's ..... .

a) mother b) sister c) wife d) aunt

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have many jobs to ..... at home tomorrow.

a) have b) get c) make d) do

2 The boys swam ..... the lake.

a) across b) cross c) way d) away

3 Al Ahly won the CAF "Club of the ....." award.

a) century b) nature c) culture d) pottery

4 This shop offers a ..... MP3 player if you buy two computer laptops.

a) leisure b) kind c) busy d) free

5 These handicrafts are very popular ..... tourists.

a) for b) to c) at d) with

6 The Decent Life Initiative provides more ..... so it has sent doctors to villages.

a) public services b) education

c) opportunities d) health care

7 You usually use ..... language with people you do not know.
a) formal b) informal c) usual d) local

8 Bye! See you ..... Monday!
a) in b) on c) at d) for

9 I'm thinking of travelling to either Aswan ..... Luxor.
a) either b) or c) nor d) and

10 It was very ..... not to be selected for the basketball team.
a) disappoints b) disappoint
c) disappointed d) disappointing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (Both) us liked the fish in that restaurant. It's very delicious.
2 They have arranged to visit London. They ..... (visit) London.
3 The train to Alexandria ..... (will leave) in 10 minutes.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 The railway station is on the left of the bank and on the right of the library. (between)

.....

2 No girl is cleverer than Nada in our class. (the cleverest)

.....

3 We were having dinner when he arrived. (While)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Helping the community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 4 Have you ever travelled by plane?

Objectives of the unit

Reading : A report about experiences; texts about life experiences; *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* and *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*; a text about someone's life

Writing : A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person

Listening : An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone

Speaking : Talking about experiences; asking and answering questions about experiences; telling a story

Language : The present perfect with ever, never, for and since

Life Skills : Communication

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

Warm Up

Tick the activities that you've tried.











1. Which of these activities would you like to try? Why?

   I'd like to try ..... because .....

2. Which of these activities don't you like to try? Why?

   I don't like to try ..... because .....

Lessons 1 & 2

SB Pages 34 - 37
WB Pages 95 & 96

(A) Vocabulary

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n)	noun
(v)	verb
(adj)	adjective
(adv)	adverb
(prep)	preposition
(conj)	conjunction
(pro)	pronoun

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

adventure (n)	مغامرة	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
chart (n)	جدول/رسم بيانى	orphanage (n)	دار أيتام
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية/خبرة عمل	snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس (مستخدمًا أنبوب التنفس)
graph (n)	رسم بيانى	tent (n)	خيمة
lake (n)	بحيرة		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

about (prep)	حوالى	group (n)	مجموعة
even (adv)	حتى	half	نصف
farm (n)	مزرعة	idea (n)	فكرة
green tea (n)	شاى أخضر	wedding party (n)	حفل زفاف

Lesson 2

elderly people	كبار السن	married (adj)	متزوج
express (ed) (v)	يعبر عن	marry (y ied) (v)	يتزوج
headache (n)	صداع	opportunity (n)	فرصة
history (n)	تاريخ	sensitive (adj)	حساس
life/lives (n)	حياة/حيوات	wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

- to a football match — كان فى مباراة كرة القدم
- been ▶ to another country — كان فى إلى بلد آخر
- do ▶ the housework — يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية
- homework — يفعل الواجب المنزلى
- move ▶ to another country — ينتقل إلى بلد آخر
- make ▶ cake — يُعد «كيك»
- a kite — يصنع طائرة ورقية
- visit ▶ an orphange — يزور دار أيتام
- play ▶ tennis/volleyball/handball — يلعب التنس/الكرة الطائرة/كرة اليد
- a musical instrument — يعزف آلة موسيقية
- ride ▶ a horse/a camel — يركب حصانًا/جملًا
- sleep ▶ in a tent — ينام فى خيمة
- snorkel ▶ in the sea — يغوص/يغطس فى البحر
- swim ▶ in a pool — يسبح فى حمام سباحة
- write ▶ a list — يكتب قائمة
- What day ...? — ما اليوم ...؟
- Where is it best to + inf. ...? — أين من الأفضل أن ...؟
- win ▶ a competition — يفوز بالمسابقة/المنافسة

Lesson 2

- a point in time — نقطة زمنية معينة
- climb ▶ a mountain — يتسلق جبلًا
- get ▶ married to — يتزوج من
- How much do you know? — ما مقدار معرفتك؟

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

- at night — فى الليل
- on business — فى عمل
- on time — فى الوقت المحدد
- think of/about — يفكر فى

Lesson 2

- good/bad at — جيد/سيئ فى
- give opportunity to — يعطى فرصة
- move to — ينتقل إلى
- talk to — يتكلم إلى
- wait for — ينتظر (شخصًا/شيء)

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 1			
am/is/are	يكون	was/were	been
do	يفعل	did	done
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
make	يصنع/يُعد	made	made
read	يقرأ	read	read
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
swim	يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought
win	يكسب/يفوز	won	won
Lesson 2			
get	يحصل على	got	got
have/has	يملك/لديه	had	had
know	يعرف	knew	known
learn	يتعلم	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
meet	يقابل	met	met

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My cousin got married ..... an English woman.
   a) in b) for c) to d) at
2. Adel ..... the science competition. He's very clever.
   a) gained b) won c) earned d) kept
3. I listened to too loud music and now I have a ..... .
   a) headache b) fever c) rash d) stomach ache

Answers

١ د) ٢ ب) ٣ أ)

Language Notes

Comparing nouns:

مقارنة الأسماء:

Types of noun نوع الاسم	Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين	Superlative المقارنة بين مجموعة
Countable الاسم الذى يُعد	more + اسم جمع + (than) (أكثر) • I have more **friends** than Hany. fewer + اسم جمع + (than) (أقل للجمع) • I ate fewer **apples** than Dalia.	the most + اسم جمع (الأكثر) • I have the most **friends**. the fewest + اسم جمع (الأقل للجمع) • I ate the fewest **apples**.
Uncountable الاسم الذى لا يُعد (كمية)	more + اسم كمية + (than) (أكثر) • Mona drank more **juice** than Aya. less + اسم كمية + (than) (أقل للكمية) • Dina has less **money** than me.	the most + اسم كمية (الأكثر) • Mona drank the most **juice**. the least + اسم كمية (الأقل للكمية) • Dina has the least **money**.

half (of) + اسم جمع + فعل جمع
half (of) + اسم مفرد لا يُعد (كمية) + فعل مفرد

- About half **the people** in the class **haven't** been to a football match.
- About half of **the rice is** in the fridge.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like to buy ..... bread than I did yesterday.
   a) most **b) fewer** c) many d) more
2. Half of the boys ..... got the full marks.
   a) are **b) is** c) has d) have
3. He did ..... work of any of us.
   a) least **b) most** c) the fewest d) the least

Answers (p ٤) (p ٢) (p ١)

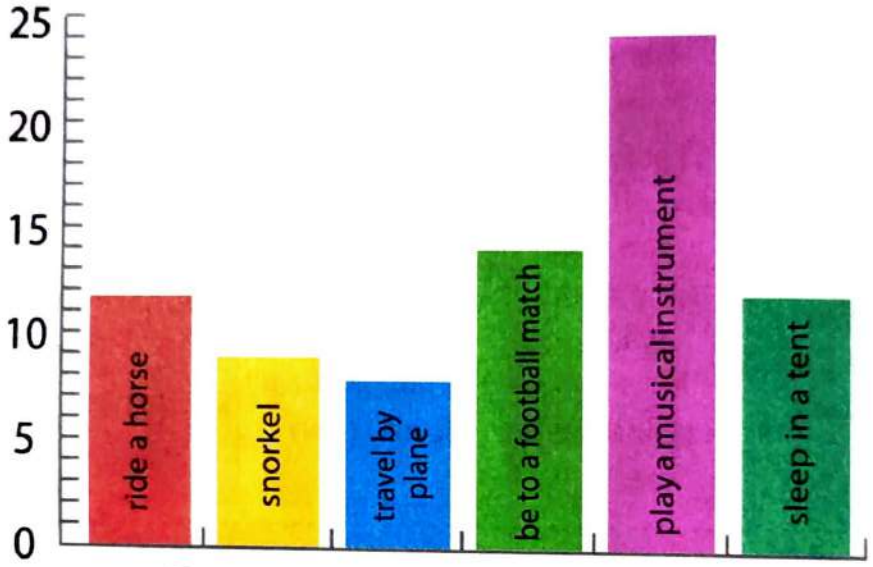
Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What activities do you enjoy doing?

1. Adam asked the people in his class about their experiences[1]. Look at the graph[2] and read his report. Answer the questions. SB Page 35



Experiences of people in the class

I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most people in the class have played a musical instrument[3]. Not many people have ridden a horse or slept in a tent. Even fewer people have snorkelled[4]. Most people in the class have never travelled by plane, but Hazem has travelled by plane three times! I also asked, 'Have you ever been to a football match?' About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match and about half the class have.

(1) خبرات
(2) رسم توضيحى
(3) آلة موسيقية
(4) يغوص

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. Not many people in the class have played a musical instrument. ( )
2. About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match. ( )
3. Not many people have ridden a horse or slept in a tent. ( )

Lesson 2

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How long have you known your best friend?

3. *Listen to Talia talking to her grandmother and answer the questions.*

SB Page 36



Talia : Grandma, how long have you lived in this house?

Grandmother : Oh, I've lived here since I got married to your grandfather.

Talia : Really? How long have you been married to Grandad?

Grandmother : We've been married for fifty years!

Talia : That's a long time!

Grandmother : Yes, it is! And we've known each other since we were ten years old.

Talia : That's like Mum and Dad. They've known each other for a long time, too. And I've lived in the same house since I was born.

Grandmother : Yes, your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008. Before that, they lived with me here for five years.

Talia : Did they? I didn't know that!

Grandmother : You've never asked me about it before!

Post-listening question: - When did Talia's mum and dad move to their house?

Lesson 2

Language

WB Page 96

3. *Circle the correct words.*

Judy: Dad, how long **have you worked** at the bank?

Dad : I've worked there **since** we moved to Cairo.

Judy: How long **have you** lived in Cairo?

Dad : We've been in Cairo **since** you were born, but we lived in a different flat then.

Judy: How long have you lived in this flat?

Dad : Well, we've lived here **for** ten years.

Judy: So my brother Imad **has always lived** here?

Dad : Yes, he's nine now, so he's lived here **for** all of his life.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I have never ..... a competition at school.
a) written b) done c) made d) won

2 To our surprise, we saw many people ..... in a tent on the beach.
a) sleeping b) swimming c) snorkelling d) diving

3 When we were on the farm, my cousin taught me how to ..... a horse.
a) snorkel b) sleep c) drive d) ride

4 The ..... shows how house prices have increased since 2011.
a) character b) graph c) calligraphy d) picture

5 People ..... from their mistakes.
a) teach b) express c) ask d) learn

6 My uncle is a kind man. He visits a/an ..... at the weekends.
a) orphanage b) park c) restaurant d) beach

7 Most people in the class have never ..... by plane.
a) ridden b) travelled c) driven d) snorkelled

8 Lots of children like to ..... in a lake on hot days in summer.
a) swim b) fly c) ride d) sleep

9 Have you ..... the housework alone?
a) done b) drunk c) made d) won

10 You should give your children an opportunity to ..... themselves.
a) move b) meet c) express d) provide

11 It's a pity that we didn't dive or ..... in the sea last time.
a) sleep b) snorkel c) sink d) drown

12 Life is either a brave ..... or nothing at all.
a) export b) environment c) experiment d) adventure

13 The guitar is my favourite ..... .
a) sport b) machine
c) music d) musical instrument

14 Elderly people can be very ..... so you should listen to them carefully.
a) sense b) sensitive
c) sensitivity d) sensitively

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Drinking ..... tea is more useful than usual tea.
a) red b) white c) green d) black

2 A ..... of girls was doing a school project on how to save water.
a) file b) group c) lots d) quality

3 ..... is a water sport.
a) Cycling b) Snorkelling c) Walking d) Jumping

4 ..... a loaf is better than no bread.
a) Some b) Never c) Half d) All

5 A/An ..... refers to the day when you were born.
a) everyday b) holiday c) birthday d) midday

6 I've lived here since I got married ..... your grandfather. WB
a) to b) from c) of d) with

7 You can't ..... a very high mountain without the suitable equipment.
a) run b) sleep c) walk d) climb

8 They moved ..... a new house with lots of space. They liked it so much.
a) from b) of c) for d) to

9 I had a lot of interesting ..... during my stay in Africa.
a) experiment b) experiments c) experiences d) experience

10 Who has ..... this list of new students? WB
a) written b) drunk c) done d) won

11 The ..... shows our results over the past year.
a) note b) album c) graph d) picture

12 My mother has never ..... to a football match.
a) visited b) been c) taken d) waited

13 Have you ever been to London ..... business? WB
a) at b) in c) on d) of

14 Climbing the mountain was a great ..... .
a) feature b) adventure c) lecture d) treasure

(B) Language

The present perfect tense: زمن المضارع التام:

We use have/has + the past participle to talk about things that we have done at some time in the past (past experiences). We don't need to say when we did something.

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأشياء التى فعلناها فى وقت ما فى الماضى بدون تحديد زمن الفعل

Form التكوين

He, She, It, اسم مفرد → has + P.P.
I, You, We, They, اسم جمع → have + P.P.

- I have ('ve) eaten Chinese food.
- They have ('ve) ridden a horse.
- He has ('s) travelled by plane.

Negative النفى

He, She, It, اسم مفرد → hasn't + P.P.
I, You, We, They, اسم جمع → haven't + P.P.

- I haven't been to a football match.
- They haven't slept in a tent.
- Amira hasn't won the competition.

Usage الاستخدام

- شىء حدث فى الماضى وله أثر فى الحاضر.
- I have **lost** my keys. I can't open the door.
- شىء حدث ولم يحدد وقت حدوثه أو لم يحدد نقطة معينة من الوقت.
- I have **travelled** to many countries (this year).
- شىء بدأ فى الماضى وانتهى فى الحاضر أو مازال مستمرًا فى الحاضر.
- She has **finished** washing the dishes.
- I have **lived** here for ten years.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No questions:

Has + (he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + **P.P.**?
Have + (I, you, we, they, اسم جمع) + **P.P.**?

- Has he **read** the book yet?
- Have they **eaten** lunch?

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + has + (he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + **P.P.**?
Q. word + have + (I, you, we, they, اسم جمع) + **P.P.**?

- What have you **done** since 6 o'clock?

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I've just ..... (have) lunch.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (had) لوجود have التى يأتى بعدها التصريف الثالث P.P.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

لاحظ استخدام هذه الكلمات:

already بالفعل , ever من قبل , just حالاً/توًا , never أبدًا , yet بعد/حتى الآن, lately مؤخرًا, recently حديثًا, for لمدة , since منذ

(A) ever/never

(١) never (أبداً) تستخدم فى وسط جملة المضارع التام أى بعد (have/has) لتدل على النفى.

Subject + **have/has** + never + P.P.

- He **has** never **been** to Paris.

(٢) ever (من قبل) تستخدم فى وسط السؤال فى المضارع التام أى بعد (have/has) والفاعل وقبل P.P.

Have/Has + subject + ever + P.P.?

- **Has** your father ever **visited** Paris?

B) since/for

(٣) وعند ذكر وقت مع المضارع التام نستخدم قبل الوقت كلمتى (for لمدة) أو (since منذ).

Subject + **have/has + P.P.** + for/since + وقت

- Lama **has had** her phone for two years.
- Mr Sabri **has been** at this school since 2020.

تعرف على الفرق فى الاستخدام بين since/for:

for + a period of time المدة كاملة دون ذكر البداية		**since + a point in time** يذكر بداية الوقت	
for + عدد + وقت	for two (hours/days/weeks/months/years/centuries)	since + اليوم/الشهر السنه/فترات اليوم/فصول السنة/	since (two o'clock/Sunday/May/2010/morning ../winter ..
for + the last + وقت	for the last (Sunday/week/month/May/year)	- since + last + وقت - since + اسم (بدون فاعل)	since last (Sunday/week/month/May/year)
for a while للحظة/for ages لمدة طويلة/ for long لمدة طويلة/for over لمدة أكثر من/ for more than لمدة أكثر من/for a long time لمدة طويلة/for all of his life طوال حياته		since yesterday منذ أمس/since the age of منذ سن/since then منذ ذلك الحين	

لاحظ أن: يمكن أن يأتى بعد since جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

ماضى بسيط + فاعل + since + فاعل + have/has + P.P. + Subject

- I've lived in the same house since I was born.

How long

عند السؤال عن المدة فى المضارع التام نستخدم (كم المدة) How long

How long + have/has + subject + P.P. التصريف الثالث?

- How long **has** Talia's grandmother **been** married? - She has been married since 1990.
- How long **have** they **known** each other? - They've known each other for a long time.

لاحظ أن:

استخدامات (been) مع المضارع التام:

هناك فرق فى المعنى بين:

has/have been to: ذهب إلى/ زار مكان و عاد منه

- My father has been to many countries.

has/have gone to: ذهب إلى/ زار مكان ولم يعد منه

- My father has gone to France. He'll come back next week.

Subject + have/has + been + صفة/اسم (يكون)

- He has been **ill** since last month.
- I've been **a doctor** for twenty years.

Subject + have/has + been + in/at + مكان (يمكث/يقيم)

- My grandfather has been in **a hospital** for two weeks.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you ..... (never) ridden a camel?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ever) لأنها سؤال فى زمن المضارع التام.

2. She has not seen him ..... (since) a long time.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (for) لوجود كلمة a long time.

Check Point

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How ..... (many) have you lived in this town?
2. Nader ..... (have) bought a new bike.
3. My friends ..... (didn't) visited me since last Monday.

Answers

1 long
2 has
3 haven't

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Maher ..... not been to France.
a) has b) is c) have d) does

2 Nora has ..... her umbrella.
a) forget b) forgets c) forgetting d) forgotten

3 I haven't worked ..... last December.
a) since b) for c) ago d) when

4 Gigi's been in the USA ..... three years.
a) since b) for c) ever d) after

5 Have you ..... slept in a tent? WB
a) ever b) never c) yet d) usually

6 I ..... a teacher since 1995.
a) was b) have been c) has been d) was being

7 **A:** Has he finished on time? **B:** Yes, he ..... . WB
a) is b) does c) has d) hasn't

8 How long ..... the children slept?
a) did b) have c) has d) was

9 **A:** When ..... to their house? **B:** 3 years ago.
a) they moved b) did they move
c) they have moved d) have they moved

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I've lived in the same house ..... (for) I was born. WB
2 How long has he ..... (work) in this school? WB
3 We ..... (never/spend) our holidays there.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I first started to play the guitar when I was 16. (since)
.....

2 He came to live here two years ago. (for)
.....

3 This is their first visit to London. (never)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He ..... done his homework very well.
a) isn't b) aren't c) hasn't d) haven't

2 She ..... here for one week.
a) is b) has c) has been d) been

3 I ..... sent you a message.
a) have never b) never have c) ever have d) have ever

4 Have you ever ..... Aswan in winter?
a) been b) gone c) being d) been to

5 They ..... each other since last year.
a) knew b) known c) have known d) has known

6 She ..... her friend for a long time.
a) wasn't see b) didn't see c) hasn't seen d) doesn't see

7 Have you ever ..... a kite?
a) makes b) make c) made d) making

8 My uncle has..... to many countries.
a) been b) gone c) be d) went

9 Have ..... gone diving?
a) ever b) ever you c) you ever d) no word

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 I has read your book many times. (.....)
2 It never has been hot in the Antarctica. (.....)
3 The class has do 5 tests this month. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I started writing this letter a week ago. (for)
.....

2 My father stopped smoking ten years ago. (since)
.....

3 I have a bike. I bought it two months ago. (for)
.....

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about experiences

السؤال والإجابة عن الخبرات

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

Which people in your family have been to another country?

أى الأشخاص فى عائلتك ذهبوا إلى دولة أخرى؟

My uncle has been to France. ذهب عمى إلى فرنسا.

Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?

هل أى شخص من عائلتك تسلق جبلًا؟

Yes. My cousin has climbed a mountain. قام ابن خالى بتسلق جبل.

Have any of your cousins got married? هل تزوج أى شخص من أبناء عمومتك؟

No, none of them has married. لا، لم يتزوج أى منهم.

When did Talia's grandmother move to the house she lives in now?

متى انتقلت جدة تاليا إلى المنزل الذى تعيش فية الآن؟

She moved to it 7 years ago. انتقلت إليه منذ سبع سنوات.

How long has Talia's grandmother been married? كم مدة زواج جدة تاليا؟

She has been married since 1980. إنها متزوجة منذ عام ١٩٨٠.

How long have you lived in your house? كم المدة التى عشتها فى منزلك؟

I've lived there since I was born. عشت هناك منذ ولادتى.

Type a message

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak and Hassan are talking about sports.

Malak : Hi, Hassan. I didn't know you play tennis.
Hassan : Oh, (1)..... sport.
Malak : (2).....?
Hassan : I have played it for ten years.
Malak : (3).....?
Hassan : I started it when I was eleven.
Malak : (4).....?
Hassan : No, I haven't entered a competition.
Malak : When do you usually play it?
Hassan : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend how long he/she has played football.
.....
2. You ask you friend if he/she has ever been to the USA.
.....
3. You want to know how long your parents have been married.
.....
4. You want to know if your friend has ever sung before in a concert.
.....
5. Your father asks you if you have finished your homework.
.....
6. You are asked when you started doing your favourite hobby.
.....



Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazin asks Eyad if he has a hobby.

Mazin : Hello, Eyad. How are things with you?

Eyad : Fine. Nothing new!

Mazin : (1).....?

Eyad : Yes, I do. I play sports.

Mazin : Which sport would you prefer?

Eyad : Well, (2)..... .

Mazin : (3).....?

Eyad : I've played football (4)..... .

Mazin : (5).....?

Eyad : You won't believe it! My father taught me to play it.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend asks you if you have written a story.

.....

2 You ask your father when he got married.

.....

3 You reply to your friend who asks you how long you have lived in your house.

.....

4 You want to know if your brother has watched that film many times.

.....

5 You ask your own friend if he/she slept late last night.

.....

6 Your friend wants to know how long you have learnt English.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about your favourite hobby and how long you have practised it. كيفية الكتابة عن هواياتك المفضلة ومنذ متى وأنت تمارسها.

- My favourite hobby is .....
- I have done it for/since .....
- I learnt it from .....
- I usually do it when .....
- I usually do it with .....
- It teaches me to be .....

Writing tips

Always indent before starting a paragraph. 0.5 indentations are standard for English writing.

اترك دائمًا مسافة بادئة قبل بداية فقرة. ٢/١ سم هو مقدار المسافات البادئة فى كتابة الإنجليزية.

Example

"My favourite hobby"

Life will be boring if we only work, that's why we need to have a hobby. My favourite hobby is cooking. At first, I used to help my mum in her cooking. But later, I found that I really enjoy cooking. I asked my mum to teach me cooking and she was really happy about this. Then she taught me and I learnt quite much everything about cooking. I have done this hobby for eight years.

Everyone says that my food is really delicious and I also think so. I wish to become a popular cooking teacher in the future. Once, I cooked for my cousin who came from America and he was amazed after eating that food. That day was really inspiring for me, everybody liked my dish.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "The hobby you like best":

The hobby I like best

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Fatima asks Hamza if he likes watching chess games.

Hamza: Oh! A chess competition!
Fatima: Well. (1)……?
Hamza: Of course, and I also like playing it.
Fatima: Are you good at playing chess?
Hamza: Yes, I think I'm the best one at school to play chess.
Fatima: (2)……?
Hamza: I think I have played it for 5 years.
Fatima: (3)……?
Hamza: I started to play it (4)…… .
Fatima: Wow! I hope (5)…… .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your sister how long she has been ill.

……

2 Your friend wants to know if you have ever been to a European country.

……

3 You are asked when you were born.

……

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I found her …… really interesting, so we decided to discuss them at the meeting.
a) albums b) ideas c) minds d) matters

2 Grandpa, when did you …… my grandma?
a) do b) discuss c) marry d) introduce

3 I am scared to …… by plane.
a) ride b) travel c) drive d) snorkel

4 We had lots of …… on our trip.
a) experiments b) adventures c) minds d) matters

5 My mum always …… delicious cakes.
a) watches b) drinks c) makes d) does

6 I've never been very good ..... maths.
a) in b) for c) to d) at

7 A/An ..... is a place for the care or education of orphans.
a) hospital b) museum c) orphanage d) restaurant

8 ..... you ever travelled to Canada?
a) Have b) Has c) Are d) Do

9 My father has ..... to Rome. He is on his way back to Egypt.
a) been b) gone c) went d) was

10 I don't like salty fish at all. I have ..... eaten it.
a) for b) since c) ever d) never

4 Fill in the gaps:

I like playing chess. I started playing it three years ago. I (1)..... never played it online, but I will play it one day. I have (2)..... a prize recently. I haven't lost any chess games (3)..... five months. I (4)..... joined any national competitions. I hope I will join in the future.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Magdy lives in Aswan. He moved there in 2007. (for)
.....

2 Samira started playing the violin three years ago. (since)
.....

3 I last ate pizza a week ago. (eaten)
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your favourite hobby" WB

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB Pages 38 - 40
WB Pages 97 & 98

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

amazing (adj)	مذهل
aquarium (n)	معرض الأحياء المائية
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية
countryside (n)	الريف
deaf (adj)	أصم
fun (n)	مرح/فرح
grandparents (n)	الأجداد
hearing problems	مشاكل فى السمع
local (adj)	محلى
parents (n)	الوالدان
shark (n)	سمكة قرش
sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
special (adj)	خاص/مميز

Lesson 4

adventure (n)	مغامرة
awake (adj)	مستيقظ
canoe (n)	زورق
dream (n/v)	حلم/يحلم
environment (n)	البيئة
finally (adv)	أخيراً/فى النهاية
fog (n)	ضباب
foggy (adj)	ضبابى
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع
forest (n)	غابة
fun novel	رواية ممتعة
lost (adj)	مفقود/تائه
raft (n)	طوافة (قارب مستقيم من الأعمدة الخشبية)
scare (d) (v)	يخيف
scared (adj)	خائف
sequel (n)	تكملة/نتيجة/عاقبة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

as if	كما لو
Athens (n)	أثينا
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يصدق
buildings (n)	مبانى
chess (n)	شطرنج
Chinese food (n)	طعام صينى
city (n)	مدينة
die (d) (v)	يموت
English teacher (n)	مدرس لغة إنجليزية
field (n)	حقل

history (n)	تاريخ	still (adv)	مازال
really (adv)	حقًا	Syria (n)	دولة سوريا
Saudi Arabia (n)	المملكة العربية السعودية	team (n)	فريق
sea animals (n)	حيوانات بحرية	village (n)	قرية

Lesson 4

again (adv)	مرة أخرى	however (adv)	ومع ذلك
all day	طوال اليوم	meaning (n)	معنى
all night	طوال الليل	noisy (adj)	صاخب
American (n/adj)	أمريكى	notebook (n)	كراسة
beach (n)	شاطئ	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
boat (n)	قارب/مركب	sound (n)	صوت (شىء)
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من	strange (adj)	غريب
dictionary (n)	قاموس	together (adv)	معًا/سويًا
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	try (y ied) (v)	يجرب
hotel room (n)	غرفة فندقية	writer (n)	كاتب

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

all my life	طوال حياتى	play ▶ an instrument	يعزف على آله موسيقية
Cairo Opera House	دار الأوبرا المصرية	play ▶ the piano	يعزف البيانو
eat ▶ Chinese food	يأكل طعامًا صينيًا	start ▶ school	يبدأ الدراسة
have ▶ a change in life	لديه تغيير فى الحياة	the only hard of hearing person	الشخص الوحيد الذى يواجه صعوبة فى السمع
join ▶ a sports club	ينضم إلى نادى	there is lots to do	يوجد الكثير لفعله
learn ▶ a language	يتعلم لغة	win ▶ a match	يفوز بمباراة
leave ▶ school	يترك/يغادر الدراسة		
move ▶ to a new house	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد		

Lesson 4

be ▸ badly hurt	يصاب بطريقة سيئة	I'm sure	أنا متأكد
be ▸ lost	يضل الطريق	look ▸ angry	يبدو غاضبًا
all the time	طوال الوقت	play ▸ a game	يلعب لعبة
find ▸ a place for	يجد مكانًا لـ	say ▸ sorry to	يقول آسف لـ
a dream	لديه حلم	stop ▸ for the night	يتوقف للراحة ليلاً
have ▸ a terrible night	لديه ليلة رهيبة		

prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

for a holiday	من أجل الإجازة	in the school holidays	فى العطلات المدرسية
for the first time	لأول مرة	interested in	مهتم بـ
from when	منذ أن	play at a concert	يعزف فى حفلة موسيقية
help with	يساعد فى	school for	مدرسة لـ

Lesson 4

a game for you	لعبة من اجلك	got into a canoe	يركب زورقًا
at the end	فى النهاية	happy with	سعيد مع/من
call out	ينادى	in a canoe	فى زورق
care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	on a raft	على طوافة
climb on the raft	يتسلق على الطوافة	on holiday	فى إجازة
feel strongly about	يشعر بقوة عن	pieces of	قطع من
float on water	يطفو على الماء	sleep on the raft	ينام على الطوافة
for a long way	لشوط طويل	think about/of	يفكر/يعتقد فى
from that time	من ذلك الوقت	try to + inf.	يحاول أن
go along the river	يذهب على طول النهر	way to	الطريق لـ
go down the river	يذهب إلى النهر	worry about	يقلق على

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن	busy	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
difficult/hard	صعب	easy	سهل	there	هناك	here	هنا

Lesson 4

awake	مستيقظ	asleep	نائم	narrow	ضيق	wide	واسع
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر	similarities	تشابهات	differences	اختلافات

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
show	يبين/يعرض	showed	shown
teach	يُدرس/يُعلم	taught	taught
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
Lesson 4			
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
know	يعرف	knew	known
lose	يضل الطريق/يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
take	يأخذ	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 4

awake (adj)	مستيقظ	not sleeping
canoe (n)	زورق	a long, narrow boat for one or two people
care about (v)	يعتنى/يهتم بـ	feel strongly about someone or something
dream (n)	حلم	pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping
follow (v)	يتبع	walk or drive behind someone
raft (n)	طوافة	pieces of wood that are put together so they can float on water

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dolphins are friendly ..... animals.
a) wild
b) see
c) sea
d) land

2 What are you interested ....., Maher?
a) in
b) on
c) by
d) to

3 The path was too ..... for two people to walk together, so one of them walked first.
a) wide
b) narrow
c) strange
d) strong

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 b)

Language Notes

1. ماضى بسيط + فاعل + **from when** + ماضى بسيط + فاعل — منذ أن
   - I **learnt** sign language from when I **was** a young boy.

2. **Subject + first/last +** ماضى بسيط
   - When I first **started** school, I went to a special school for deaf children.

3. **special** — خاص/مميز (بفئة معينة ولا تعنى الملكية لفرد بعينه)
   private — خاص (وهى تعنى الملكية الخاصة بفرد)
   - He went to a special school for deaf people.
   - He went to a private school. It cost his father so much money every year.

4. فاعل + **used to + inf.** — اعتاد أن (فعل شىء فى الماضى ولم يعد يفعله فى الحاضر)
   - We used to **live** in the countryside.

5. هناك بعض الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد والجمع حسب ما تشير إليه مثل:
   family/team + فعل مفرد — إذا كانت تشير إلى شىء واحد ككتلة واحدة
   family/team + فعل جمع — إذا كانت تشير إلى الأفراد
   - My **family** is a happy one.
   - Some of my **family** still live there.

6. **forget to + inf.** — ينسى أن (يفعل شيئًا)
   - I just forgot to **tell** you when I was awake.

7. **so + adj. + that +** جملة — جدا لدرجة أن
   - It was so foggy that I could not see the raft!

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother ..... the piano from when he was five.
   a) play b) playing c) to play d) played
2. My father used to ..... up at 7 am.
   a) woke b) wake c) waken d) waking
3. I first ..... my wife when we were at university.
   a) meeting b) meet c) met d) to meet

Answers (1 d) (2 b) (3 c)

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you prefer to live in a city or in the country? Why?

2. Read the texts and answer the questions.

SB page 38

Maher : I have lived in a village(1) in the south(2) of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another country(3), but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy, but it was fun. We went to lots of museums(4) because I am very interested in history.



(1) قرية
(2) جنوب
(3) دولة
(4) متاحف
(5) مشاكل فى السمع
(6) لغه الإشارة
(7) أصم
(8) مدرسة محلية
(9) الأجداد
(10) الريف

Azza : I have had hearing problems(5) all my life and I learnt sign language(6) from when I was a baby. When I first started school, I went to a special school for deaf(7) children. Now, I have been at a local school(8) for three years. I am the only hard of hearing person in my class. Sometimes it is difficult, but I have a teacher who can use sign language to help me. She explains things I can't understand in sign language. Some of my friends have learnt some sign language, so they can help me, too.



Wael : My parents died when I was a baby so I have lived with my grandparents(9) since I was one. We used to live in the countryside(10), but we moved to the city three years ago.
I like living here, there is lots to do. I joined a handball club and I have won lots of matches with my team. It's really fun.



Post-reading questions:

1. Why does Wael live with his grandparents?
2. Where does Maher live?

Lesson 3

Language

4. Complete the text with the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets. SB page 35



My name's Salma. I **was** born in Syria but my family **came** to Egypt when I was five years old. We **haven't visited** Syria since I was very young, but some of my family still live there. When I was eight, I **started** playing the piano. I **have played** in many concerts. I love music. Two years ago, I **played** at a concert in the Cairo Opera House. It was amazing!

Lesson 3

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Have you ever been to another country?

3. Listen to three people talking about their experiences. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. WB page 97

Teen boy : I'm Ashraf. I've always lived in Cairo, but last year, I visited a village in the country for the first time. I loved it! It was very quiet!

Teen girl : My name's Magda. I've never been to England, but last week, I talked to my cousins. They were in London. They showed me some famous buildings there on their phone.

Woman : I'm Nawal and I have been an English teacher for ten years. I've always taught children, but last year, I started teaching older people, too. I've taught them a lot, but they don't learn as quickly as the children!

Post-listening question:

- How long has Nawal been an English teacher?

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you like sea animals? Why/Why not?

4. Circle the correct words.

WB page 97



Osama **has always loved** fish and other sea animals [1]. He **started** to like them when he visited an aquarium [2] for the first time in 2015. His family **have taken** him to the aquarium every summer since then. Last year, the people at the aquarium **asked** him to help them give food to the fish. He loves doing that! He **has helped** at the aquarium in the school holidays for a year now. He **has given** food to most of the small fish, but he **hasn't helped** with the sharks [3]. They are too dangerous [4]!

(1) حيوانات بحرية
(2) معرض الأحياء المائية
(3) سمك القرش
(4) خطير

Post-reading question: - When did Osama start to like sea animals?


تطبيق الأضواء
جمّع نقاطك واستبدلها الآن بمجموعة
من الهدايا الرائعة على متجر الأضواء.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال
App Store
www.aladwaa.com

Lesson 4

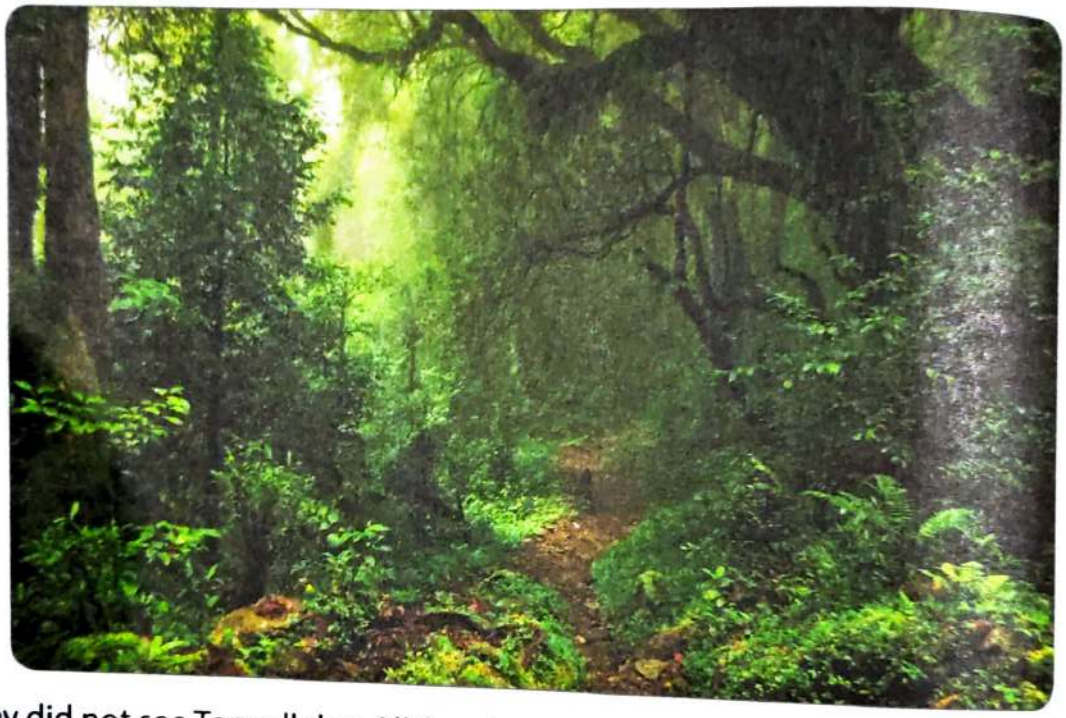
Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of stories do you enjoy reading? Why?

1. Read the two stories. Who thought that somebody was lost[1]? Who travelled in a canoe[2]? Why did they think or do these things? SB page 40

The Adventures[3] of Tom Sawyer



They did not see Tom all day. All the time that Tom was playing games in the forest[4], his Aunt Polly worried about him. She thought he was lost or badly hurt. She was so happy when he returned and told her that he was fine.

'It was just a game, Aunt Polly,' said Tom.

'I'm sure it was a fun game for you, but we all worried about you. We didn't know where you were. Why didn't you tell me?'

'I told you in a dream[5],' said Tom. 'I just forgot to tell you when I was awake[6].'

'He never thinks of other people,' said his cousin Mary.

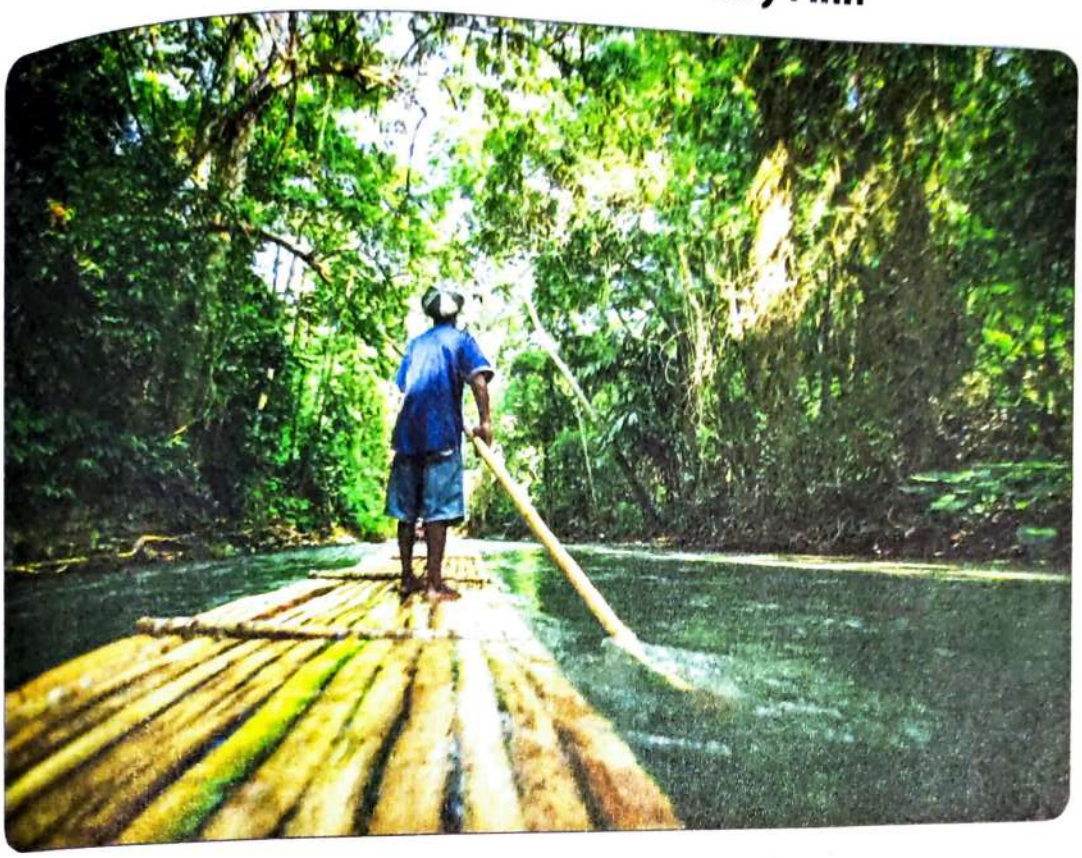
'Yes, you should think about other people,' said Aunt Polly.

'You know I care about you, Tom. Try to remember how other people feel.'

'I'm sorry that I didn't tell you,' said Tom. 'It won't happen again.'

(1) مفقود/تائه
(2) زورق
(3) مغامرات
(4) غابة
(5) حلم
(6) مستيقظ

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn



Jim and I were on a raft[7] going down the river when it became foggy[8]. I left the raft to try and find a place for us to stop for the night. I got into a small canoe and went along the river. Then I tried to return. However, it was so foggy that I could not see the raft! I called out but I could not hear Jim.

(7) طوافة (قارب)
(8) ضبابي
(9) خائف

My canoe went down the river for a long way, and I hoped the raft was following me. I travelled all night, but the next morning, it was not foggy and finally I saw Jim.

He was sleeping on the raft.

I climbed on the raft and said, 'Hello, Jim. Have you been sleeping?'

'I was scared[9]!' he said. 'I couldn't see anything because it was foggy!'

He looked angry. 'I had a terrible night, Huck!' he said. 'It was like a bad dream.'

'I'm sorry,' I said. From that time, I decided I would never scare him again.

Post-reading question:

- What are the similarities and the differences between the two stories?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had a terrible ..... last night while I was sleeping. I saw a dangerous dog chasing me.
   a) trip b) picnic c) fun d) dream
2. Mazin's father does not know the way to the beach, so he can ..... us.
   a) trick b) move c) take d) follow
3. The ..... thing is that, he wouldn't take any money from me! I'm very happy.
   a) terrible b) amazing c) horrible d) bad
4. **A:** We are going to a ..... . Would you like to come?
   B: No, I don't like music so much.
   a) park b) museum c) match d) concert
5. She's deaf and dumb and communicates using ..... language.
   a) sign b) signal c) chart d) graph
6. The ..... is very green in spring.
   a) ocean b) desert c) sky d) countryside
7. I found it hard to stay ..... . I slept at once.
   a) awake b) scared c) worried d) happy
8. She's writing a ..... to her first novel.
   a) sequel b) notebook c) poster d) ticket
9. My little brother is interested ..... reading adventure stories.
   a) on b) at c) for d) in
10. We had lots of ..... at the party today.
    a) fun b) funny c) sadness d) sad
11. It was so ..... that the driver couldn't see the way ahead.
    a) happy b) sunny c) foggy d) noisy
12. You can stop ..... the night at a hotel in the town.
    a) on b) at c) in d) for
13. I joined a school ..... deaf people.
    a) at b) for c) of d) in

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He was ..... for days in the desert.
a) gained b) missed c) won d) lost

2 Like many young people, Azza and her brothers really ..... the environment. WB
a) follow b) awake c) care about d) take

3 My sister has learnt two new languages since she ..... school. WB
a) built b) left c) followed d) tricked

4 Loud noise can ..... animals and birds.
a) chase b) follow c) feel d) scare

5 I've just ..... the local tennis club.
a) arrived b) got c) went d) joined

6 The villa has its own ..... beach.
a) local b) private c) special d) privacy

7 The ..... is a scary sea animal.
a) dolphin b) shark c) tiger d) lion

8 The ..... floated away down the river.
a) aeroplane b) bus c) raft d) plane

9 He travelled along the Nile in a ..... .
a) plane b) canoe c) car d) taxi

10 For real Indian food, just ..... these recipes.
a) see b) run c) chase d) follow

11 I used to help Judy ..... her homework.
a) in b) with c) out d) for

12 I always ..... sorry when I make a mistake.
a) speak b) say c) tell d) talk

13 Nahla is not here this week because she has gone to France ..... a holiday.
a) for b) with c) at d) off

(B) Language

The difference between the present perfect and past simple
الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام	The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط
Use it for past actions when the time is not important or for things that still continue now. نستخدمه لأحداث ماضية عندما لا يكون الوقت مهمًا أو للأشياء التى مازالت مستمرة حتى الآن. (لا يحدد الوقت تمامًا). • I have been deaf all my life. • I have never been to another country.	**Use it for finished actions in the past. We usually say when it happened.** نستخدمه لأحداث منتهية فى الماضى. وعادة ما نذكر وقت الحدوث. (مع كلمات دالة على الماضى). • **Last** year, I visited Cairo. • We moved to the city three years **ago**.
تلخيص: المضارع التام يعبر عن حدث فى الماضى وله أثر فى الحاضر أو مازال مستمرًا أو لم يحدد وقت الحدوث.	تلخيص: الماضى البسيط يعبر عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى وليس له أثر فى الوقت الحاضر وعادة ما نذكر وقت الحدوث.

• **A:** Have you finished your homework?
B: Yes, I have finished it. / **B:** Yes, I finished it an hour ago.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (have got) married a few months ago.
• الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الماضى البسيط.
2. We ..... (haven't gone) to school yesterday.
• الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't go) لوجود كلمة yesterday الدالة على الماضى البسيط.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Does) your mother cooked lunch?
2. Where have you ..... (spend) the summer holiday?
3. I ..... (buy) this book last Friday.

Answers 1 Has 2 spent 3 bought

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Last year, the people at the aquarium ..... my brother to help them give food to the fish. WB
a) ask b) asked c) has asked d) have asked

2 Two years ago, I ..... at a concert in the Cairo Opera House. SB
a) will play b) played c) have played d) play

3 My grandfather is an author. He ..... many books.
a) is writing b) write c) has written d) wrote

4 My uncle, who died last year, was an actor. He ..... the piano in many concerts.
a) has played b) plays c) was playing d) played

5 I ..... to New York last Christmas.
a) have flown b) fly c) flew d) am flowing

6 I ..... tennis three times this week and it's still only Wednesday.
a) was playing b) play c) have played d) played

7 I .....! What shall I do now?
a) 've finished b) am finish c) am finishing d) finished

8 I'm very hungry. It's 11:30 and I ..... anything yet today.
a) don't eat b) didn't eat
c) haven't eaten d) am not eating

9 My father ..... in a bank for 10 years, then he became a computer programmer.
a) works b) has worked c) worked d) was working

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Jana ..... (never/understand) the present perfect tense.
2 I ..... (live) in Aswan when I was young.
3 I ..... (read) six books this month.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I started playing the guitar when I was five. (since)
.....

2 I haven't seen Ali since we were at school. (I last)
.....

3 I visited my grandparents 5 days ago. (for)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I joined a handball club but I ..... lots of matches with my team.
a) haven't won b) have won c) didn't win d) has won

2 I ..... late for school again this morning. The teacher is not happy!
a) arrive b) arrived c) am arriving d) have arrived

3 I ..... my foot while playing tennis last week, and now I can hardly walk.
a) have injured b) injure c) injured d) was injuring

4 **A:** Have you ever ridden a horse?
B: No, but I ..... a camel when I visited Egypt last year.
a) was riding b) have ridden c) rode d) ride

5 I like your watch. How long ..... it?
a) you have b) are you having c) have you had d) did you have

6 I ..... to the cinema since I came to Germany.
a) didn't go b) haven't gone c) wasn't gone d) hasn't gone

7 **A:** Where's Basmala? **B:** She ..... to the library!
a) is going b) went c) 's been d) 's gone

8 That's a lovely scarf! When ..... it?
a) did you buy b) have you bought c) you buy d) do you buy

9 Who ..... the telephone?
a) have invented b) invented
c) is inventing d) has invented

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 We go to China in 2010. (.....)
2 My family have visit Brazil a few times. (.....)
3 I lose my watch two days ago. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 We started sitting here two hours ago.
..... (for)

2 He has studied English since 2015.
..... (in)

3 We saw Julie last night.
..... (since)

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about experiences
التحدث عن الخبرات

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

Have you ever moved to a new house?
هل سبق لك وانتقلت لمنزل جديد؟

Yes, I have.
نعم.

When did you move to a new house?
متى انتقلت لمنزل جديد؟

We moved 3 years ago.
انتقلنا منذ ثلاث سنوات.

Where did you move to a new house?
أين انتقلتم؟

We moved to a house in Mohandseen.
انتقلنا لمنزل بالمهندسين.

Have you ever joined a sports club?
هل سبق لك أن انضممت لنادٍ رياضى؟

Yes, I have.
نعم.

Which club did you join?
إلى أى نادٍ انضممت؟

I joined Al Gazeera Sports Club.
انضممت لنادى الجزيرة.

Type a message

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Wael and Haythm are talking about travelling.

Wael : Hello, Haythm. How are you?

Haythm : (1)..... .

Wael : (2)..... to another country?

Haythm : Yes, of course. It's great seeing new places.

Wael : Have you ever travelled to an Arab country?

Haythm : (3)..... .

Wael : (4).....?

Haythm : I travelled to Abu Dhabi.

Wael : Well! (5).....?

Haythm : I went there last year.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend if he/she has ever joined a sports club.

.....

2. You want to ask your friend if he/she has moved to a new house.

.....

3. Your friend asks you if you have ever snorkelled.

.....

4. You ask your friend which country he/she travelled to.

.....

5. You want to know if your friend has ever played a musical instrument.

.....

6. You're asked if you have ever been to London.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write a character description

كيفية الكتابة عن وصف الشخصية

- What's the character's name?
- Describe the character.
- Mention some information about the character.
- Where did he/she live?
- What did he/she do?
- Do you like the character? Why/Why not?
- What did you learn from that character?

Writing tips

Make sure when you are describing a character to:

1. Start with physical appearance.
2. Carefully choose your adjectives.
3. Think about a character's interests.

عند وصفك لشخصية تأكد أن:

١ - تبدأ بوصف المظهر الجسدى.

٢ - تختار الصفات بعناية.

٣ - تفكر فى اهتمامات الشخصية.

Example

"My favourite story"

My favourite story is *Alice's adventures in Wonderland*. It's a children's story by Lewis Carrol. He wrote it in 1865. Alice is the main character of the story. She is a clever girl. She's also sensible. She goes to Wonderland and meets a lot of interesting characters there. She meets the White Rabbit who is always busy and in a hurry. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again. I learnt from this story that friendship is very important for us.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "Your favourite story":

My favourite story

Lessons 3&4 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman wants to know where Mamdouh is going to.

Ayman : Where are you going, Mamdouh?
Mamdouh : (1)..... meet our friend, Nader.
Ayman : (2).....?
Mamdouh : Because we are going to a music lesson.
Ayman : Great! (3).....?
Mamdouh : Yes, I play the guitar. Have you ever played an instrument?
Ayman : (4)..... . I play the piano now.
Mamdouh : Would you like to come with us?
Ayman : (5)..... .
Mamdouh : Great! Let's go. I am sure we will enjoy there!

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You want to know if your aunt has ever learnt French.
.....
2 Your friend asks you if you have ever watched horror movies.
.....
3 You ask your friend how long he/she has done his favourite hobby.
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A ..... is a long, narrow boat for one or two people.
a) ship b) canoe c) dream d) forest

2 Aunt Polly thought that Tom was lost or badly ..... .
a) remember b) dream c) hurt d) heart

3 The party was amazing yesterday and we had a lot of ..... .
a) happy b) sadness c) darkness d) fun

4 I have a little interest in ..... .
a) historic b) historian c) historical d) history

5 I called ..... loudly but no one could hear me.
a) in b) on c) out d) off

6 You have to ..... your father's advice.
a) trick b) behave c) follow d) steal

7 If you want to ..... a musical instrument well, you have to practise it.
a) play b) do c) make d) have

8 I ..... my dictionary. Have you seen it?
a) 've lost b) lose c) am lost d) lost

9 I ..... Judy for three years - we still meet once a month.
a) have known b) knew c) known d) know

10 I ..... a new computer. Do you want to see it?
a) buy b) bought c) was buying d) 've bought

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Where ..... (you/go) last summer?
2 I ..... (finish) my exams finally - I'm so happy!
3 I ..... (have) lunch with Emily yesterday.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I haven't worn this shirt since last week. (I last)

.....

2 I started to live in Tanta when I was ten. (since)

.....

3 The last time she travelled was 5 months ago. (She hasn't)

.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A story you have read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB Pages 41 - 43
WB Pages 99 - 101

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

alone (adj)	بمفرده
coach (n)	مدرب
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
gymnastics (n)	الجمباز
huge (adj)	ضخم
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعى
organise (d) (v)	ينظم
train (ed) (v)	يتدرب
windsurf (ed) (v)	يركب الموج

Time expressions تعبيرات الوقت

after that	بعد ذلك
ago	منذ
for about	لمدة حوالى
later	فيما بعد
now	الآن
since that time	منذ ذلك الوقت
then	ثم
when	عندما

Lesson 6

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجز
affect (v)	تؤثر على
biography (n)	سيرة شخصية
brain (n)	مخ
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف
dyslexia (n)	صعوبة/عسر القراءة
disability (n)	صعوبة/عجز
little (adj)	صغير
preparatory (adj)	إعدادى
result (n)	نتيجة
theme park (n)	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
timeline (n)	جدول زمنى
volunteer (ed) (v)	يتطوع

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

broken (adj)	مكسور	storm (n)	عاصفة
cry (y ied) (v)	يبكى	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
How easy ...?	ما مدى سهولة ...؟	well (adv)	جيد/بطريقة جيدة
How fast ...?	كم سرعة ...؟	wind (n)	رياح
miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد	windsurfing (n)	ركوب الموج
noisy (adj)	صاخب	windy (adj)	كثير الرياح

Lesson 6

art (n)	رسم/فن	Greece (n)	اليونان
artist (n)	فنان	Indian (adj)	هندى
bathroom (n)	حمام	one day	ذات يوم
clever (adj)	ذكى/ماهر	scientist (n)	عالم
events (n)	أحداث	surprised (adj)	مندهش

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

do ▶	a sport	يؤدى رياضة	give ▶	a talk	يلقى حديثًا/خطابًا
	gymnastics	يمارس الجمباز	make ▶	notes	يدون ملاحظات
enter ▶	a competition	يدخل مسابقة	tell ▶	a story	يحكى/يروى قصة

Lesson 6

do ▶	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	get	a prize for	يحصل على جائزة فى
	an exam	يؤدى اختبار		▶ help	يتلقى مساعدة
take ▶	an exam	يأخذ اختبار		results	يحصل على نتائج

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	in a boat	فى قارب
far from	بعيد من	take back to	يعيد إلى
happen to	يحدث لـ	try to + inf.	يحاول أن

Lesson 6

at a charity for	فى جمعية خيرية لـ	for a test	للاختبار
at school	فى المدرسة	on holiday	فى إجازة
difficult for	صعب لـ	part of	جزء من
find out	يكتشف	a problem with	مشكلة فى

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 6

remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 5

Present		Past simple	Past participle
hurt	يؤذى/يؤلم	hurt	hurt
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
tell	يخبر	told	told

Lesson 6

draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
mean	يعنى	meant	meant
spell	يتهجى	spelt	spelt

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 6 Dyslexia (n)	عسر/صعوبة القراءة	is a learning disability which affects reading and writing. Many smart people have dyslexia. They can understand and see well, but they have problems with reading.
Lesson 7 an experience (n)	تجربة حياتية	something that happens in your life
discover (v)	يكتشف	to find out some new information about something
join (v)	ينضم إلى	to become part of a club
result (n)	نتيجة	this tells you how you have done in an exam
snorkel (v)	يغوص/يغطس	swim with your face under water using special equipment.

Language Notes

1. **find + adj.** صفة — يجد
   - I found the exams **difficult**.
2. **with** — ذو/لديه
   - I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "……" is the opposite of "strong".
   a) weak b) week c) wake d) awake
2. I usually go to Marsa Matrouh …… holiday.
   a) by b) with c) on d) of
3. What job does your father ……, Hatem?
   a) make b) do c) take d) keep

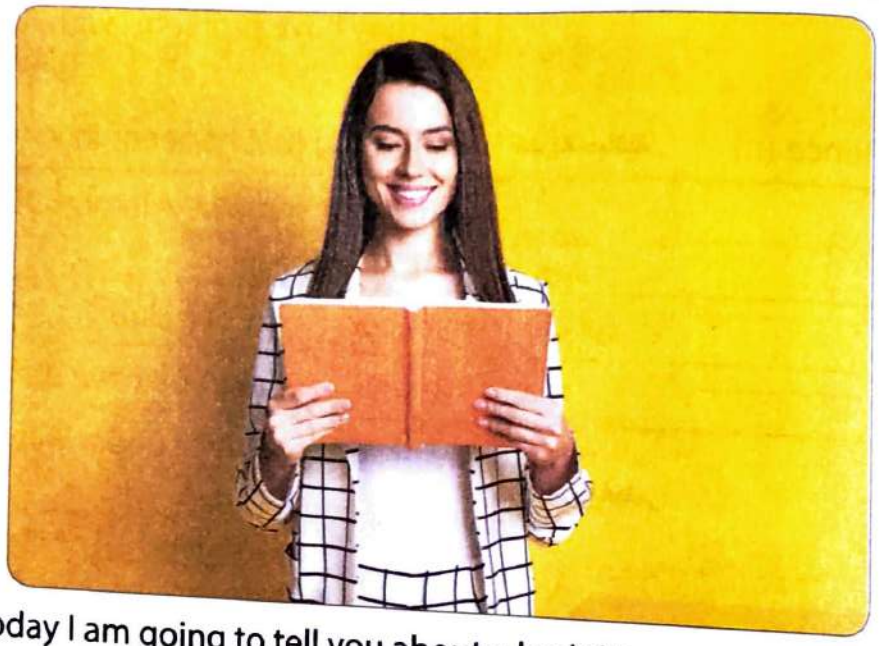
Answers (١ a) (٢ c) (٣ b)

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - What sport do you like?

2. *Listen to Nihal telling a story and answer the question.* SB Page 41



Nihal: Today I am going to tell you about a bad thing that happened to me three months ago. I have done gymnastics (1) for about ten years. I train (2) on Wednesdays and Saturdays every week. A few months ago, my coach (3) asked if I wanted to enter my first competition. I was really excited and I practised every day for a month. On the Thursday before the competition (4), I was practising at home when I fell. My leg really hurt so my mum took me to the hospital. The doctor said I had a broken leg! I was so sad and I cried and cried. I couldn't enter the competition. I haven't been able to do gymnastics since then but I hope I can do it again soon. I really miss gymnastics. Next year I will try to enter the competition again!

(1) الجمباز
(2) يتدرب
(3) مدرب
(4) مسابقة

Post-listening questions:

1. How long has she done this sport?
2. Where was she when she hurt her leg?

Lesson 5

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- How do you spend your free time?

1. Complete the story with these time expressions. WB page 99



Karim has enjoyed windsurfing (1) for about **two years**. He usually goes with his older brother. A few **months ago**, he decided to windsurf alone (2). He did not tell his brother this. It was windy, but that is good if you want to windsurf. In **the afternoon**, the wind suddenly (3) became very strong. The wind took Karim far from the beach. He was very scared (4). Some people in a boat came to help Karim. **After that**, they took him back to the beach. Karim has not windsurfed alone since **that time**. **Now**, he always windsurfs with an older person. He has learnt an important lesson!

(1) ركوب الأمواج
(2) وحيدًا
(3) فجأة
(4) خائف

Post-reading question:

- What was the lesson that Karim has learnt?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you have any study problems?

1. Read about Munir and answer the questions.

SB page 42



I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. **When** I was little, I always loved to draw and paint but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered(1) that I had dyslexia(2). This means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell. **After that**, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good results(3)! I was surprised(4) and happy. **Later**, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day. **Now**, I volunteer(5) at a charity(6) for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

(1) اكتشف
(2) عسر/صعوبة القراءة
(3) نتائج
(4) مندهش
(5) يتطوع
(6) جمعية خيرية

Post-reading question: - Why do you think Munir volunteered for a charity?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Have you visited any foreign countries?

1. Put the events in Judy's life in the correct order.

WB page 100



1. I was born in Manchester(1) in England(2).
2. When I was a baby, my parents moved to(3) Egypt.
3. Before I started school, I learnt to speak Arabic.
4. When I started preparatory school(4), nobody knew that I was English!
5. After my thirteenth(5) birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there.
6. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!

(1) مدينة مانشستر
(2) إنجلترا
(3) انتقل إلى
(4) مدرسة إعدادى
(5) الثالث عشر

Lesson 6

Listening Text

2. Listen to Tarek. What did he do in 2020?

WB Page 100



Tarek: My name's Tarek. I was born in 2006. I'm the oldest child in my family. My sister Dina was born in 2008 and my brother Ali was born in 2011. So, what exciting things have I done in my life? I've been to Jordan! My family went on holiday there when I was ten, so in 2016. I love handball and started playing it when I was 12. I play for a team and we've won a competition! We won it in 2020. That was amazing. What amazing things have you done?

Post-listening question:

- When did Tarek start playing handball?

Lesson 7

Reading Text

4. Complete the text with the past simple or present perfect. Choose the correct words, for or since.

SB Page 42



Different families **have lived** in our house **for** over 200 years. I **have lived** here with my family **since** 2016. Before that, we **lived** in Cairo. My parents **changed** some of the house when we moved here. For example, my mum **wanted** a new bathroom! My grandmother **has lived** with us **for** four years. It is a happy, family home.

Life Skills

When you are giving a talk or telling a story, try to organise your ideas before you talk. Think about making your story more interesting by adding adverbs and adjectives. For example:

Suddenly, there was a **huge**, **noisy** storm!

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She does ..... at school. She likes jumping and dancing.
a) baseball b) volleyball c) handball d) gymnastics

2 My father likes to ..... everything before doing it.
a) think b) follow c) organise d) damage

3 Can you ..... what this word means, please?
a) explain b) plan c) organise d) train

4 You cannot ..... when there isn't any wind.
a) dive b) windsurf c) snorkel d) sink

5 Scientists often ..... new and exciting things about space. WB
a) plan b) follow c) discover d) train

6 Children who have ..... find it difficult to read or spell.
a) toothache b) stomach c) headache d) dyslexia

7 The ..... is the thing we have in our heads and it controls everything in our bodies.
a) brain b) eye c) ear d) neck

8 We have the ..... of our tests, and we all did well! WB
a) events b) causes c) results d) reasons

9 Hatem ..... to help the elderly in the nearby charity home. WB
a) introduced b) volunteered c) organised d) greeted

10 Dyslexia is a learning ..... which affects reading and writing.
a) ability b) result c) reason d) disability

11 How do you ..... a story to young children?
a) lie b) say c) tell d) talk

12 I ..... take the 7:15 train to work. I always do that.
a) locally b) lonely c) lately d) normally

13 We ..... learnt that this wasn't true at all.
a) later b) latter c) late d) lately

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandfather has ..... many things in his life. I am very proud of him.
a) organised b) introduced c) achieved d) followed

2 The police ..... dogs to to help them with their work.
a) organise b) test c) train d) produce

3 He ..... very useful ideas.
a) managed b) produced c) introduced d) took

4 They live in a ..... house with seven rooms and three bathrooms.
a) small b) huge c) tiny d) limited

5 They left him ..... in the house and went out.
a) alone b) proud c) naughty d) clever

6 The history of the world is about the ..... of great men.
a) hero b) person c) character d) biography

7 He invited me to ..... a talk at the meeting.
a) order b) call c) pull d) give

8 I won a prize ..... running.
a) in b) for c) at d) of

9 She is really a fine ..... . She draws cool drawings.
a) writer b) nurse c) actress d) artist

10 I was ..... of the big dog, so I ran.
a) scared b) happy c) proud d) late

11 Her father was a brilliant ..... . He invented many great things.
a) writer b) scientist c) cook d) teacher

12 Do you have to ..... an exam in French?
a) give b) do c) make d) stay

13 I don't ..... what you're trying to say. Can you say it in another way?
a) do b) agree c) understand d) explain

(B) Skills

1. Speaking

1. Telling a story

سرد قصة

When you want to tell a story about something that happened in your life, think of an interesting story that has happened to you. It might be something good (e.g. a holiday) or something bad (e.g. a problem that you had).

عندما تريد أن تحكى قصة حدثت فى حياتك، فكر فى قصة شيقة حدثت لك. يمكنك أن تحكى شيئًا جيدًا (إجازة - على سبيل المثال) أو احكى عن شىء سيئ (مشكلة واجهتها - على سبيل المثال)

يمكنك متابعة الخطوات التالية لتتمكن من حكاية قصة جيدة:

١- ابدأ قصتك بهذة الجملة:

-Today, I'm going to tell you about a good/bad thing that happened to me.

سأتحدث اليوم عن شىء جيد/سيئ حدث لى.

٢- قم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة التالية:

-What happened? ماذا حدث؟

-When? ومتى حدثت القصة؟

-Where? أين حدثت؟

-How did you feel? بم شعرت؟

2. Asking and answering questions about achievements

السؤال والإجابة عن الإنجازات

1. What important things have you achieved in your life? ما الأشياء المهمة التى حققتها فى حياتك؟

- I have learnt to swim. لقد تعلمت السباحة.

2. When did you learn that? متى تعلمت ذلك؟

- It was last year. كان ذلك السنة الماضية.

3. Who helped you to achieve them? من ساعدك على تحقيق ذلك؟

- My father. والدى.

4. How do you feel? كيف تشعر الآن.

- I am really happy and proud of myself. أشعر بالسعادة و أننى فخور بنفسى.

(B) Skills

1. Speaking

1. Telling a story

سرد قصة

When you want to tell a story about something that happened in your life, think of an interesting story that has happened to you. It might be something good (e.g. a holiday) or something bad (e.g. a problem that you had).

عندما تريد أن تحكى قصة حدثت فى حياتك، فكر فى قصة شيقة حدثت لك. يمكنك أن تحكى شيئًا جيدًا (إجازة - على سبيل المثال) أو احكى عن شىء سيئ (مشكلة واجهتها - على سبيل المثال)

يمكنك متابعة الخطوات التالية لتتمكن من حكاية قصة جيدة:

١- ابدأ قصتك بهذة الجملة:

- Today, I'm going to tell you about a good/bad thing that happened to me.

سأتحدث اليوم عن شىء جيد/سيئ حدث لى.

٢- قم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة التالية:

- What happened? ماذا حدث؟
- When? ومتى حدثت القصة؟
- Where? أين حدثت؟
- How did you feel? بم شعرت؟

2. Asking and answering questions about achievements

السؤال والإجابة عن الإنجازات

1. What important things have you achieved in your life? ما الأشياء المهمة التى حققتها فى حياتك؟
   - I have learnt to swim. لقد تعلمت السباحة.
2. When did you learn that? متى تعلمت ذلك؟
   - It was last year. كان ذلك السنة الماضية.
3. Who helped you to achieve them? من ساعدك على تحقيق ذلك؟
   - My father. والدى.
4. How do you feel? كيف تشعر الآن.
   - I am really happy and proud of myself. أشعر بالسعادة و أننى فخور بنفسى.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Zein is talking to Ali who lost his mobile phone.

Zein : Hi, Ali. I think you look sad.

Ali : Hello, Zein. (1)..... .

Zein : I'm sorry to hear that.

Ali : I don't know how to tell my parents.

Zein : (2).....?

Ali : I lost my new mobile two hours ago.

Zein : (3).....?

Ali : On the bus.

Zein : I hope you will (4)..... .

Ali : (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You tell your friend something important you have achieved in your life.

.....

2. You ask your friend what important things he/she has achieved in his life.

.....

3. You want to know when your friend learnt another language.

.....

4. You see your friend look worried. Ask him/her why.

.....

5. Your sister wants to know how you feel when you got the prize.

.....

6. Your friend asks you where you first saw your best friend.

.....

Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Zeinab won a prize.

Fatma : You look so happy. Tell me!

Zeinab : Well! I have (1)..... .

Fatma : Congratulations on winning a prize! (2).....?

Zeinab : I got my prize last Sunday.

Fatma : What (3).....?

Zeinab : I got it for running.

Fatma : Really? You are (4)..... runner.

Zeinab : Thanks. I hope I will win the next competition.

Fatma : (5)..... .

Zeinab : Thanks again for your kind feelings.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your mother asks you why you're happy today.

.....

2 You ask your friend what he/she has done this week.

.....

3 Your teacher wants to know what great achievement you did.

.....

4 You look sad. Your father asks what has happened.

.....

5 Your brother looks worried. Ask him what has happened.

.....

6 You are asked about the things you have achieved in your life.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about your life

كيفية الكتابة عن حياتك

- When and where were you born?
- What did you like doing?
- What problems did you have?
- Tell about your achievements.
- How do you feel now?

Writing tips

Read your paragraph out loud or ask someone else to read it and give you feedback.

تم بقراءة فقرتك بصوت عال واطلب من شخص آخر قراءتها واعطاءك رأيه بها.

To : tarek@yahoo.com
From : ali@gmail.com
Subject : My life

Dear Tarek,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my life. I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When I was young, I always loved to read and write stories. At school, I went to the library to read or borrow some books. I liked adventure stories. I thought I was very clever at school, but I had a problem with my eyes. Then my parents and the school decided to take me for eye tests. They discovered that I had poor eyes and I needed glasses. This means it is difficult for me to read and spell without glasses. After that, I got glasses to help me and I started to see well. When I took my exams, I got really good results! I was surprised and happy. Later, I got a prize for my last story and then I decided I would like to be a writer one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children to teach them how to read and write. Write soon.

Yours, Ali

Check Point: Write an email of 110 words to your friend Sally to tell her about a problem you have had in your life. Your name is Ola. Your email address is ola@student.com. Your friend's email address is sally@yahoo.com.

Lessons 5&6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Said is talking to Sayed who has left his job.

Said : You look so sad. Why?

Sayed : (1)..... .

Said : Oh, dear! (2)..... leave your job?

Sayed : Because the manager always shouts at me.

Said : (3).....?

Sayed : I left it yesterday.

Said : (4)..... then?

Sayed : I will look for a new job.

Said : I hope you will find one soon.

Sayed : (5)..... your feelings.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your cousin which achievement he/she has done.

.....

2 Your friend wants to know what made you so happy.

.....

3 Your father asks you about your feelings when your favourite team won the match.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Scientists around the world are working to ..... a cure for COVID-19.
a) introduce b) explain c) discover d) train

2 Students in Egypt go to ..... schools after primary ones.
a) secondary b) nursery c) main d) preparatory

3 I put a/an ..... for myself to finish what I want at a particular time.
a) online b) timeline c) offline d) outline

4 The ..... park attracts 2.5 million visitors a year.
a) time b) tame c) team d) theme

5 The sky began to be dark as the ..... started.
a) storm b) sail c) sun d) moon

6 We have lots of jobs to ..... today.
a) make b) do c) spend d) stay

7 Those ..... neighbours are the most terrible thing in my life.
a) calm b) noisy c) empty d) free

8 Have you ever ..... to Giza, Mazin?
a) be b) been c) were d) being

9 I have studied English ..... 8 years.
a) never b) since c) ever d) for

10 I haven't found a job since I ..... the university.
a) left b) have left c) leave d) has left

4 Fill in the gaps:

Osama (1)..... always loved fish and other sea animals. He started visiting the aquarium two years (2)..... . (3)..... year, the people at the aquarium asked him to help them give food to the fish. He loves doing that. But he (4)..... visited the aquarium for two weeks because he has exams.

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"What you have achieved"

Unit 4 Review

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d)	يحقق/ينجز	learn a language	يتعلم لغة
adventure	مغامرة	local	محلى
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	lost	مفقود/تائه
awake	مستيقظ	move	ينتقل
been to a football match	كان فى مباراة كرة القدم	normally	بشكل طبيعى
biography	سيرة شخصية	organise (d)	ينظم
brain	مخ	orphanage	دار أيتام
cave	كهف	raft	طوافة
chart	جدول/رسم بيانى	result	نتيجة
concert	حفلة موسيقية	ride a horse/a camel	يركب حصانًا/جملًا
deaf	أصم	sensitive	حساس
discover (ed)	يكتشف	sequel	تكملة/نتيجة/عاقبة
dyslexia	صعوبة/عسر القراءة	sign language	لغة الإشارة
environment	البيئة	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
experience	تجربة حياتية/خبرة عمل	snorkel in the sea	يغوص/يغطس فى البحر
explain (ed)	يشرح	special	خاص/مميز
follow (ed)	يتبع	swim in a lake	يسبح فى بحيرة
forest	غابة	theme park	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
fun novel	رواية ممتعة	train (ed)	يتدرب
go to another country	يذهب إلى بلد أخرى	volunteer (ed)	يتطوع
graph	رسم بيانى	win a match	يفوز بمباراة
gymnastics	الجمباز	windsurf (ed)	يركب الموج
hearing problems	مشاكل فى السمع		
join a sports club	ينضم إلى النادى		

(B) Language

1 The present perfect tense: زمن المضارع التام:

- They have ('ve) ridden a horse.
- He has ('s) travelled by plane.
- I have not (haven't) played a musical instrument.
- They have ('ve) never travelled by plane.
- Has your father **ever** visited Paris?

Subject + have/has + P.P. + for/since + وقت

- How long has Talia's grandmother been married?
  - She has been married since 1990.
- How long have they known each other?
  - They've known each other for a long time.

2 The difference between the present perfect and past simple
الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

نستخدم الماضى البسيط لأحداث منتهية فى الماضى. وعادة ما نذكر وقت الحدوث. (مع كلمات دالة على الماضى).

- Last year, I visited Cairo.

نستخدم المضارع التام لأحداث ماضية عندما لا يكون الوقت مهمًا أو للأشياء التى مازالت مستمرة حتى الآن. (لا يحدد الوقت تمامًا).

- I have been deaf all my life.

(C) Skills

Speaking

1. Asking and answering questions about experiences

- Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?
  - My cousin has climbed a mountain.
- **A:** How long have you lived in your house? **B:** I've lived there since I was born.
- **A:** When did you move to a new house? **B:** We moved 3 years ago.
- **A:** Which club did you join? **B:** I joined Al Gazeera Sports Club.

2. Telling a story

- Today I'm going to tell you about a good/bad thing that happened to me.
- What happened? - When? - Where? - How did you feel?

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 4 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) **Fathy** : Have you ever played volleyball?

Fahed : .....

B) **Gehad** : .....?

Sanaa : I've lived there since I was born.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Most people in the class	**a)** a good thing that happened to me.
2. They've known each other	**b)** moved to a new house?
3. I learnt sign language	**c)** since they were young.
4. When did you	**d)** have played a musical instrument.
5. Today I'm going to tell you about	**e)** move to a new house?
	f) from when I was a baby.

Answers: **1.** ( ) **2.** ( ) **3.** ( ) **4.** ( ) **5.** ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about TEN (10) sentences on:

"Your favourite story"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 4

Based on Unit 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sawsan and Somya are talking about helping in the kitchen.

Sawsan : I don't like helping in the kitchen. Do you like it?

Somya : (1)..... . I spend good time in the kitchen.

Sawsan : (2).....?

Somya : Yes, I have cooked food many times.

Sawsan : How long have you cooked?

Somya : (3)..... nine years.

Sawsan : (4).....?

Somya : Of course my mother taught me.

Sawsan : (5)..... please teach me how to cook?

Somya : Yes, of course.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend for how long he/she has played his/her favourite sport.

.....

2. Your father asks you if you have seen that film before.

.....

3. You ask your friend to tell you about the greatest achievements he/she has done.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mark Twain wrote *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* in 1876, eight years before *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*, but *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* is more taught in high schools. Tom Sawyer is a troublemaker. After Tom gets in trouble, he is ordered by Aunt Polly, who he lives with, to whitewash their fence. When his friends see him painting the fence, they want him to let them help. Tom loves Becky Thatcher, a new girl in town, but Becky is hurt when she finds out that Tom liked someone else before her. Tom is always getting into trouble, usually with his friend, Huckleberry Finn. They watch Injun Joe kill Dr Robinson. Tom, Huck, and their friend, Joe Harper, run away for a while. Injun Joe runs away, too. While Tom goes on a picnic with his class to McDougal's Cave. During the picnic, Tom

and Becky get lost for some days in the cave. Injun Joe hides before he sees them. Tom gets out of the cave with Becky. He tells Judge Thatcher about Injun Joe being inside the cave. Later, Tom and Huck return to the cave and discover where Injun Joe hid his gold.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

.....

2 Which story is more taught in high schools?

.....

3 Why is Becky Thatcher hurt?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 Tom Sawyer lives with ..... .

a) Injun Joe b) Dr Robinson
c) Aunt Polly d) Becky Thatcher

5 ..... watch(es) Injun Joe kill Dr Robinson.

a) Huck b) Joe Harper c) Tom d) All above

6 Aunt Polly orders Tom to ..... the fence.

a) paint b) build c) damage d) design

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She ..... to teach in the school.

a) introduced b) volunteered c) organised d) understood

2 I have never ..... by plane.

a) snorkelled b) swum c) ridden d) travelled

3 Some children whose parents were dead go to a/an ..... to get a good care.

a) bank b) office c) park d) orphanage

4 She couldn't ..... a place for herself to have some rest.

a) find b) lose c) miss d) follow

5 Oil floats ..... water.

a) under b) in c) for d) on

6 He is crying because he has ..... his knee.

a) protected b) behaved c) hurt d) saved

7 Eman and Marwa have ..... a music club. They want to learn to play the piano.

a) discovered b) joined c) volunteered d) achieved

8 She ..... in seven different countries, so she knows a lot about different cultures.

a) lived b) has lived c) didn't live d) hasn't lived

9 Have you ..... been to New York?

a) ever b) never c) yet d) for

10 I ..... very well last night. There was loud music.

a) wasn't slept b) didn't sleep

c) haven't slept d) don't sleep

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My father has driven the same car ..... (since) ten years.

2 I ..... (study) French for ten years.

3 She ..... (break) her leg the day before her exam.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 Ali bought a car five years ago. (for)

.....

2 Mr Mesbah lives in Abu Dhabi. He moved there in 2010. (since)

.....

3 He has studied English for ten years. (ago)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A good holiday you have had"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4

Think and Create

The school has organised a writing competition. If you want to join, you have to write about one of these topics:

1. The distinction between young and old age

Use these guiding points to help you:



- How is the old people's life different?
- How do they spend their time? And how do you spend yours?
- What do you know about the older people in your family? Where did they live in the past and where do they live now?
- Are they still living in the same place? How is it different from the past?
- Where do you live now? And how is the town or the village different?
- What activities did they use to do when they were young? Are they the same activities you do nowadays?

2. Life Experience

Use these guiding points to help you:



- Describe how amazing/terrible your life experience is.
- What important things have you achieved in your life? When did you do them?
- What other things do you want to achieve? Do you have a plan for them?
- What is the event that has an effect on your life? What did it change in your personality?

Tips

1 ➤ A suitable title
2 ➤ An introduction
3 ➤ Main ideas and information
4 ➤ Resources



Unit 5 Young role models

Objectives of the unit

Reading : A text about a business person and a space engineer; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player

Writing : A description of someone's job; a paragraph about a tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model

Listening : A conversation about a role model; an interview with an inventor; a conversation about sharing good news

Speaking : Discussing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news

Language : The present perfect with *yet* and *already*

Life Skills : Respect for diversity

Warm Up

Guess what these people do:

Across:

I take pictures of people, places or things.



1

I rescue people and buildings from fire.



3

I prepare delicious food for people to eat.

6



5 4 2

1

6

7

3

Down

I repair vehicles when they are damaged.

2



I help people get well.

5



I treat diseases and injuries of animals.

7



I grow crops and raise animals.

4



Lessons 1 & 2

SB Pages 44 - 47
WB Pages 102 & 103

(A) Vocabulary

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n)	noun
(v)	verb
(adj)	adjective
(adv)	adverb
(prep)	preposition
(conj)	conjunction
(pro)	pronoun

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

artist (n)	فنان
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر
business person (n)	رجل/سيدة أعمال
campaigner (n)	ناشط
championship (n)	بطولة
company (y ies) (n)	شركة
computer programmer (n)	مبرمج كمبيوتر
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم
engineer (n)	مهندس
manager (n)	مدير
mathematician (n)	متخصص بالرياضيات
musician (n)	موسيقى/موسيقار
role model (n)	قدوة
skill (n)	مهارة
space engineer (n)	مهندس فضاء
space scientist (n)	عالم فضاء
sports champion (n)	بطل رياضى
team (n)	فريق
volunteer (n)	متطوع

Lesson 2

award (n)	جائزة
challenge (n)	تحدٍ
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
crosswords (n)	الكلمات المتقاطعة
education (n)	التعليم
engineering student (n)	طالب هندسة
enter (ed) (v)	يدخل
form (n)	شكل/نوع
goal (n)	هدف (فى مهارة/فى الحياة)
health emergency (n)	طوارئ صحية
hyperloop (n)	هايبرلوب (نظام نقل)
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
receive (d) (v)	يستلم/يتلقى
space engineering (n)	هندسة الفضاء
space technology (n)	تكنولوجيا الفضاء
speech (n)	خطاب/حديث/كلام
succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
transport (n)	نقل/مواصلات

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

Brazil (n)	البرازيل	person (n)	شخص
business (n)	عمل	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
change (d) (v)	يغير/يتغير	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل
China (n)	الصين	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
country (y-ies) (n)	بلد/دولة	science project	مشروع علمي
different (adj)	مختلف	space (n)	فضاء
disabled (adj)	معاق	space science	علم الفضاء
environment (n)	البيئة	sports (adj)	رياضي
lots of = a lot of	كثير من	study (y-ied) (v)	يدرس/يذاكر
Nigeria (n)	دولة نيجيريا	travel (led) (v)	يسافر

Lesson 2

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجز	discussion (n)	مناقشة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	India (n)	دولة الهند
Africa (n)	قارة إفريقيا	situation (n)	موقف
article (n)	مقال	the Middle East (n)	الشرق الأوسط
as (prep)	كـ	the only (adj)	الوحيد
blind (adj)	أعمى	the USA (n)	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
Cairo University (n)	جامعة القاهرة	until (prep)	حتى
Cambridge University (n)	جامعة كامبريدج	village (n)	قرية

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

finish ▶	school/university ينهي الدراسة/الجامعة	leave ▶	school/university يغادر الدراسة/الجامعة
get ▶	a job (with) يحصل على وظيفة (مع/لدى)	pass ▶	an exam ينجح في الامتحان
	paid for work يتقاضى راتبًا مقابل عمل	take ▶	part (in) يشارك (في)
have ▶	a job لديه وظيفة		the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship بطولة العالم لكرة اليد للرجال ٢٠٢١
	a meeting with لديه اجتماع مع		
	a visitor from لديه زائر من		

Lesson 2

achieve	a goal	يحقق هدفًا	receive/win	an award	يتلقى/يفوز بـجائزة
become	blind	يصبح أعمى	start	a company	يبدأ في تأسيس شركة
climb	a mountain	يتسلق جبلاً	enter	a competition	يدخل مسابقة
give	a speech (to)	يلقي حديثًا/خطابًا (لـ)	travel	above the ground	يسافر فوق سطح الأرض
have	education	لديه تعليم	work	hard on a design	يعمل بجد على تصميم
need	help with	يحتاج إلى مساعدة في	work with	a charity	يعمل مع مؤسسة خيرية

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

around the world	حول العالم	try to + inf.	يحاول أن
at work	في العمل	work for	يعمل لدى
in a job	في وظيفة	work out	يحل
on a recent day	في اليوم الحالي	work with	يعمل مع

Lesson 2

believe in	يؤمن بـ	equipment for	معدات لـ
award for	جائزة في/من أجل	school for	مدرسة لـ
challenge for	تحدٍ	what kind of	ما نوع
come from	يأتي من	with top marks	بأعلى الدرجات

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

good at	جيد في	bad at	سيئ في	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار بـ	start (ed)	يبدأ	finish (ed)	ينهي
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام	young	صغير السن	old	كبير السن

build	يبنى	built	built
pay for	يدفع ثمن	paid for	paid for

Definitions التعريفات

artist (n)	فنان	He/She is good at art.
business person (n)	رجل/سيدة أعمال	He/She travels to meetings around the world.
campaigner (n)	ناشط	In his/her job, they try to change the way people do things.
computer programmer (n)	مبرمج كمبيوتر	He/She works with hundreds of computers.
engineer (n)	مهندس	He/She designs bridges.
mathematician (n)	متخصص بالرياضيات	He/She uses a lot of very big numbers to work things out in the job. He/She works with maths.
musician (n)	موسيقى/موسيقار	He/She is good at music.
scientist (n)	عالم	He/She works with science.
volunteer (n)	متطوع	He/She doesn't get paid for his/her work, but he/she likes to help people.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love my brother. I hope he will ..... his life goals.
   a) score b) miss c) achieve d) fail
2. I need a/an ..... to build my house.
   a) doctor b) engineer c) chemist d) carpenter
3. Adel is good ..... languages. He speaks English and French very well.
   a) at b) for c) by d) in

Answers (1 c) (2 b) (3 a)

Language Notes

1 **work as +** وظيفة يعمل ك

- Noha has worked as a **volunteer** since she left school.

2 **We often add (–ian) or (–ist) to make the names of jobs.**

غالبًا ما نضيف (-ian) أو (-ist) لتكوين أسماء الوظائف.

Noun الاسم	Job الوظيفة	Noun الاسم	Job الوظيفة
mathematics رياضيات	mathematician متخصص بالرياضيات	science علوم	scientist عالم
music موسيقى	musician موسيقار	art رسم	artist فنان

3 **later** + وقت بعد مرور (سنين مثلاً)

- Three years later, Samar started her own company.

4 **pass = succeed in** ينجح فى

- Students should succeed in their exams.
- Samar passed her driving test.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My brother ..... in his exams with high marks.
a) failed b) missed
c) succeeded d) passed

2 I met my old friend again two years ..... .
a) lately b) late
c) latter d) later

3 He works ..... a doctor in a hospital.
a) so b) such
c) like d) as

Answers (1 c) (2 d) (3 c)

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you want to be in the future?

2. Read the text. Why do you think Gamal likes his job? SB Page 45



My cousin, Gamal, is a business person(1). When he finished university(2), he got a job with a big company in Cairo. He's worked there for three years now.

I think he's got a very important job. He's the manager(3) of a team of people and they have meetings every day. He works very hard. Sometimes, he has to meet people from companies(4) in other countries. He has travelled to lots of interesting places. Last year, he went to Nigeria(5) and Brazil(6).

(1) رجل أعمال
(2) جامعة
(3) مدير
(4) شركات
(5) نيجيريا
(6) البرازيل

Post-reading question:

Choose the correct answer:

1. Gamal got his job after he finished (school/university).
2. Gamal is the manager of (the company/a team of people).
3. He has meetings with people from (his company/different companies) every day.

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What are you interested in? Why?

1. Read the article quickly. What did Samar design?

SB page 46



Samar Abdelfattah has always been interested in space. As a young child, she wanted to be an astronaut(1). After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering(2).

While Samar was at university, a space technology(3) company had a competition(4). Students had to design a hyperloop(5) – a new, very fast form of transport that travels above the ground. Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from the university to join her team.

Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East(6). They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the award(7).

Three years later, Samar started her own company. Now she is a space engineer and a business person. She also gives speeches(8) to other young engineers to help them achieve(9) their goals.

(1) رائد فضاء
(2) الهندسة
(3) تكنولوجيا
(4) مسابقة
(5) هايبرلوب (نظام نقل)
(6) الشرق الأوسط
(7) جائزة
(8) خطب
(9) يحقق

Post-reading question:
Complete the following sentences:
1. Samar wanted to be an ..... when she was young.
2. Samar studied ..... at Cairo University.

Listening Text

: - What do you want to do when you finish school?

n about the campaigner Magdy Abdel Sayed and choose

SB Page 47



What are you reading?
le[1] about Magdy Abdel Sayed.
paigner[2] for people who are disabled[3].
sabled?
en disabled all his life. He's done lots
things – but he has had lots of
.
s life like as a child?
ldn't move without help until he was five

school?
vasn't easy. Some schools couldn't have
tudent because they didn't have the right
for disabled people.
pened?
wanted to go to school and his parents
o have a good education[6]. They found
im and he was an excellent student.
ot of challenges for Magdy at school?
e, but he never stopped trying when things were
e he left school, he won an award[7] from Cambridge
his achievements.
g! What did he do when he finished school? Did he get a
iversity?
gdy won the award, a lot of companies wanted to give
he decided to go to university.
cause education was very important to him.
't the only important thing. Magdy has always believed
er people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for
es.
ll help people now?
works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs.
eeches[8] about how everyone can achieve their goals.

at did Magdy Abdel Sayed do when he finished school?

(1) مقال
(2) نشط
(3) معاق
(4) تحديات
(5) معدات
(6) تعليم
(7) جائزة
(8) خطب

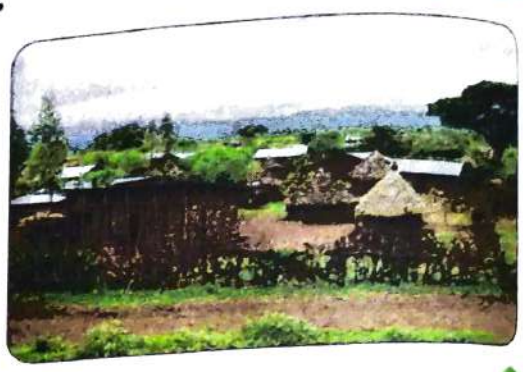
Reading Text

Lesson 2

Pre-reading question:
- What challenges do you think the disabled face?

WB page 103

2. Read and complete the text with these words.



Binita who is from a village in India(1) was five years old when she became blind(2). This was a big challenge(3) for her. She went to a school for blind(4) children until she was eleven, when she joined(5) a different school with children who weren't blind.

At school, Binita found that the children quickly learnt about her problems(6). They now know that just because she is blind does not mean she cannot do 99% of the things that they can do!

Now she is a campaigner(7) for other people who are disabled(8). Her next challenge is to help everyone understand that being disabled does not mean you cannot achieve your goals.

(1) الهند
(2) أعمى/كفيف
(3) تحدٍّ
(4) مدرسة للمكفوفين
(5) التحقت
(6) مشاكل
(7) ناشط
(8) معاقين

Post-reading questions:
1. When did Binita become blind?
2. What job does Binita do now?

Life Skills

1. What do you think are the challenges for disabled people in the situations below?
   at school - at university - at work
2. How can we help disabled people to achieve their goals?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A ..... is a person who tries to change the way people do things. WB
a) scientist b) volunteer c) campaigner d) mathematician

2 It was a real ..... to climb that mountain, but we succeeded! WB
a) challenge b) speech c) cause d) result

3 He worked as a ..... for a charity.
a) volunteer b) scientist c) musician d) waiter

4 I want to talk to your ..... about an important matter.
a) scientist b) manager c) cook d) musician

5 Her dream to ..... faculty of medicine came true.
a) reuse b) reduce c) enter d) protect

6 The nurse won a special ..... for helping so many people in the health emergency. WB
a) award b) price c) rice d) a ward

7 Which company do you work .....?
a) for b) at c) on d) to

8 She is a good ..... model for young people.
a) rule b) role c) ruler d) roll

9 The ..... over the river is made of metal.
a) sky b) roof c) tunnel d) bridge

10 She doesn't usually ..... in any of the class activities.
a) make up b) look for c) find out d) take part

11 He ..... an award for his scientific research.
a) sent b) received c) sailed d) gave

12 He ..... a company that organises trips.
a) earned b) won c) started d) finished

13 People work hard to ..... their goals.
a) lose b) hide c) score d) achieve

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Helen Keller ..... blind and deaf. She couldn't see or hear.
a) came b) became c) made d) did

2 He was angry as he tried to work ..... the sum, but he couldn't.
a) for b) out c) on d) at

3 Schools should have ..... for disabled people.
a) development b) machine c) equipment d) information

4 Schools must meet the ..... of new technology.
a) cause b) reason c) result d) challenge

5 He works hard to ..... paid for his work.
a) take b) get c) follow d) produce

6 I have to get ready before I ..... a speech.
a) give b) have c) do d) take

7 I ..... a meeting with him the day after tomorrow.
a) do b) call c) have d) give

8 I ..... twelve years of good education.
a) had b) gave c) did d) made

9 Nahla's ..... is to pass all her exams with top marks!
a) award b) call c) enter d) goal

10 You need special equipment when you ..... a mountain.
a) trek b) walk c) climb d) go

11 Every student hopes to pass their exams ..... top marks.
a) with b) at c) for d) by

12 My dream is to become a/an ..... to be able to discover space.
a) mathematician b) astronaut c) programmer d) champion

13 You can't ..... an exam without studying hard.
a) fail b) fell c) pass d) succeed

(B) Language

Remember

The difference between the present perfect and past simple.

الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط.

1 The past simple tense: زمن الماضى البسيط:

Use it for finished actions in the past. We usually say when it happened.

نستخدمه لأحداث منتهية فى الماضى. وعادة ما نذكر وقت الحدوث.

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل (ed, d, ied /أفعال غير منتظمة)

- I ate my lunch an hour **ago**.
- We moved to the city **last year**.
- Manal washed the dishes **yesterday**.

2 The present perfect tense: زمن المضارع التام:

Use it for past actions when the time is not important or for things that are still continuing now.

نستخدمه لأحداث ماضية عندما لا يكون الوقت مهمًا أو للأشياء التى ما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن. (لا يحدد الوقت تمامًا).

Subject + has/have + **P.P.**

- I have **watched** TV.
- I have **been** deaf all my life.
- He has **gone** to school.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (wore) that skirt many times.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has worn) لأنه لم يحدد وقت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم مضارع تام.

2. I ..... (have received) a letter from her two days ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (received) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الماضى البسيط.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ghada ..... (didn't make) lunch yet.
2. Last weekend, we ..... (have gone) to Tanta to visit our grandparents.
3. Aya has just ..... (did) her homework.

Answers

1 hasn't made
2 went
3 done

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandparents live in the USA, so I ..... to New York many times.
a) have flown b) flies c) am flying d) flew

2 Tamer hasn't been to London ..... we went there together.
a) since b) when c) for d) ago

3 My grandfather died 10 years before I was born, so I ..... him.
a) met b) haven't met c) didn't meet d) wasn't meeting

4 I tried to find you before school today. Where .....?
a) you have been b) had you been
c) have you been d) were you

5 This tree ..... really fast. Last year, it was only half this size.
a) grow b) grew c) has grown d) will grow

6 My maths teacher isn't happy. I ..... to bring my calculator to class.
a) forgot b) have forgotten
c) forget d) was forgetting

7 I haven't seen Samy ..... a long time. How is he?
a) for b) since c) when d) ago

8 ..... my book? I can't find it anywhere.
a) Do you see b) Did you seen
c) Did you see d) Have you seen

9 What have you done .....?
a) yesterday b) today c) last Sunday d) ago

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Last year, I ..... (travel) to meetings around the world. WB
2 I ..... (never/go) to Paris.
3 Noha ..... (work) as a volunteer since she left school. SB

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 We had a bad storm yesterday. (since)
.....

2 I haven't watched TV for three days. (I last)
.....

3 She has travelled to Rome for ten years. (ago)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We have waited ..... two years.
a) for b) since c) ever d) never

2 I ..... to the theatre many times when I lived in London.
a) was gone b) have gone c) went d) was going

3 He ..... the email many days ago.
a) sent b) has sent c) send d) sending

4 I can't remember ..... I've had this mobile.
a) how many b) how long c) ago d) since

5 I went to music class last Friday, but I ..... it very much.
a) haven't enjoyed b) don't enjoy
c) didn't enjoy d) wasn't enjoyed

6 My mum ..... to be a sports champion when she was young. SB
a) have wanted b) wanted c) want d) wanting

7 He ..... today's car race.
a) won b) has won c) winning d) win

8 Actually I had dinner with Tamer ..... .
a) lately b) already c) last night d) since last night

9 I was in a big hurry, so I ..... no time to phone you.
a) had b) was having c) have d) have had

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 I design bridges. Last year, we build a very long bridge in China. (.....) WB
2 Columbus arrive in America in 1492. (.....)
3 It rain a lot since the winter came. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 We have travelled since 2012. (for)
.....

2 Did you eat Indian food before? (ever)
.....

3 I last saw my uncle when we were in Alexandria. (since)
.....

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Discussing jobs مناقشة الوظائف

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد

Which university did Samar go to? لأى جامعة ذهبت سمر؟

She went to Cairo University. ذهبت لجامعة القاهرة.

What competition did she enter? ما المسابقة التى اشتركت بها؟

She entered a space technology competition.
اشتركت بمسابقة لتكنولوجيا الفضاء.

Who was in her team? من كان بفريقها؟

Some engineering students from the university.
بعض طلاب الهندسة من الجامعة.

Where did other teams come from? من أين أتت باقى الفرق المشاركة؟

They came from universities all around the world.
أتوا من جامعات من جميع أنحاء العالم.

When did Samar start her company? متى انشأت سمر شركتها؟

Three years later, after Samar had returned from the USA.
بعد ثلاث سنوات من عودة سمر من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

Who did she give speeches to? لمن قامت سمر بإلقاء الخطب؟

To other young engineers to help them achieve their goals.
ألقت خطبًا لصغار المهندسين لمساعدتهم على تحقيق أهدافهم.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Safaa and Elham are discussing jobs.

Safaa : Hello, Elham. How are you?
Elham : Fine. Did you finish university?
Safaa : (1)..... .
Elham : (2).....?
Safaa : I finished it two years ago.
Elham : (3)..... a job?
Safaa : Yes, I got it two months ago.
Elham : (4).....?
Safaa : I found a job for a company for computers.
Elham : (5)..... you good luck.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend when he/she went to university.
.....
2. You want to know what championship your friend entered.
.....
3. A friend of yours asks you when you started your company.
.....
4. Your friend asks you if you have ever given a speech.
.....
5. You are asked about the people who were in your team.
.....
6. You ask your friend if he/she has achieved his/her goals for the last year.
.....



2. Write it right

How to write about a role model
كيفية الكتابة عن شخص يمثل قدوة

- Who is your role model?
- What is his/her job?
- Why do you admire him/her?
- What does he/she do to help the community?
- Do you want to be like him/her? Why?

Writing tips

When writing about a role model:
عند الكتابة عن قدوة:

- Choose a character who made a difference. اختر شخصية صنعت فارقًا.
- Research his/her achievements. ابحث عن إنجازاته/إنجازاتها.
- Form a timeline and arrange your points. كون خطًا زمنيًا ورتب نقاطك.
- Check your writing for grammar and punctuation. افحص فقرتك من حيث القواعد و علامات الترقيم.

Example

"My role model"

A role model is someone we admire. He/She is someone who encourages people to do better. As we talk about the role model, every one of us has his own role model. He is the person who has a huge effect on our lives. A role model can simply be anyone from our family, our friends, or even a famous person. My role model is my mother. My mother is my first teacher, my advisor, and my support. She has always been there for me through good and bad times. She is beautiful inside out. She is an excellent cook. She has taught me to respect people. She is my role model because she gives me strength and encouragement.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "Your role model":

My role model

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Riham tells Hend about her role model.

Riham : Hi, Hend! Do you know that I want to be like Samar Abdelfattah?
Hend : (1).....?
Riham : She is a space engineer and a business person.
Hend : (2).....?
Riham : Because she worked hard to achieve her goals.
Hend : That's great. (3).....?
Riham : Yes, I'm very interested in studying space. What about you?
Hend : (4)..... .
Riham : Why not?
Hend : Because (5)..... . I want to be an artist.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your friend when he/she finished school.

.....

2 You want to know where your friend went to university.

.....

3 You ask a friend of yours about his/her role model.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She is the world ..... for the third year in gymnastics.
a) champion b) equipment
c) relationship d) championship

2 Who is the first ..... to set foot on the moon?
a) programmer b) astronaut c) engineer d) designer

3 She played the cello as if she were a ..... .
a) programmer b) musician c) scientist d) volunteer

4 Who do you think will win the ..... this year?
a) relation b) relationship
c) champion d) championship

5 The students took turns to give a ..... . Mine was about playing chess! WB
a) enter b) goal c) speech d) equipment

6 The ..... drew the scene from memory.
a) artist b) engineer c) astronaut d) scientist

7 She is going to enter the singing ..... next month.
a) lake b) band c) champion d) competition

8 ..... Italian food before?
a) Are you eating b) Have you eaten
c) Had you eaten d) Do you eat

9 He ..... to Luxor last week.
a) go b) went c) was going d) has gone

10 The old woman ..... as she was crossing the street.
a) fall b) fell c) fallen d) falls

4 Fill in the gaps:

I have always loved doing gymnastics. I first did it when I was four. I (1)..... a prize when I was six. I (2)..... joined five competitions. Now I'm going to enter the next summer competition. I (3)..... finished training for it yet. I have won three times (4)..... . I hope I will win this time.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 He wasn't at the park last week. (didn't)
.....

2 I have studied since nine o'clock. Now it is eleven. (two hours)
.....

3 He has been ill for a week. (since)
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How we can all help disabled people" WB

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB Pages 48 - 50
WB Pages 104 & 105

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

airport (n)	مطار
already (adv)	بالفعل
amazing (adj)	رائع/مذهل
biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية
create (d) (v)	ينشئ/يبدع/يبتكر
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر
dream (v/n)	يحلم/حلم
musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
nervous (adj)	عصبي/متوتر
poem (n)	قصيدة
short form	شكل مختصر
yet (adv)	حتى الآن/بعد

Short form of some words الشكل المختصر لبعض الكلمات

Noun الاسم	Short form	Noun الاسم	Short form
application تطبيق	app	photographs صور فوتوغرافية	photos
mathematics الرياضيات	maths	aeroplane طائرة	plane
television التلفاز	TV		

Lesson 4

bubble (n)	فقاعة
cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة
coronavirus (n)	فيروس كورونا
finals (n)	نهائيات
handball (n)	كرة اليد
health centre (n)	مركز صحي
hold (v)	يحتوي/يستوعب
medal (n)	ميدالية
medical team	الفريق الطبي
ministry (n)	وزارة
Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الأولمبية
organisers (n)	المنظمون
pandemic (n)	جائحة/وباء
quarter-finals	الدور ربع النهائي
spectators (n)	متفرجون
success (n)	نجاح
tournament (n)	بطولة (دورة مباريات)
youth (n)	الشباب

Similar meanings معانى متشابهة

Words		Similar meanings	
contest	منافسة	competition	منافسة
competitors	المنافسون	players	اللاعبون
staff	العاملون	workers	عمال

Words		Similar meanings	
champions	أبطال	winners	الفائزون
incredible	لا يصدق	fantastic	رائع
tournament	بطولة (دورة مباريات)	contest	منافسة
		sports event	حدث رياضى

Meanings & Opposites المعنى والتضاد

Words		Meanings		Opposites	
big (adj)	كبير الحجم	large (adj)	ضخم	small (adj)	صغير الحجم
champions (n)	أبطال	winners (n)	الفائزون	losers (n)	الخاسرون
clean (v)	ينظف	wash (v)	يغسل	make dirty	يتسخ
incredible (adj)	لا يُصدق	really good	حقًا جيد	terrible (adj)	سيئ جدًا
nobody (pro)	لا أحد	no one	لا أحد	everyone (pro)	كل فرد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

before now	قبل الآن
interview (ed) (n/v)	مقابلة/يجرى مقابلة
main (adj)	رئيسى/أساسى
maybe (adv)	ربما
restaurant (n)	مطعم
something (pro)	شىء ما
together (adv)	معًا/سويًا
until now	حتى الآن

Lesson 4

Abidjan (n)	مدينة أبيدجان
during (pre-p)	أثناء
excellent (adj)	ممتاز
hotel (n)	فندق
Ivory Coast (n)	دولة ساحل العاج
Japan (n)	دولة اليابان
reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
stadium (n)	استاد
schoolwork (n)	عمل مدرسى
technology company	شركة تكنولوجيا
timetable (n)	جدول الحصص
the Rio Olympics (n)	أولمبياد ريو
twice (adv)	مرتان

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

a book of stories	كتاب قصص
create ▶ an app	ينشئ تطبيقًا
have ▶ a tour of	يقوم بجولة فى
have ▶ lunch	يتناول وجبة الغداء
play ▶ concerts	يعزف فى حفلات موسيقية
play ▶ the guitar	يعزف الجيتار
take ▶ a boat/a bus	يأخذ قاربًا/أتوبيس
win ▶ a prize	يفوز بجائزة

Lesson 4

ask for ▶ advice	يطلب النصيحة
day and night	ليلًا ونهارًا
have ▶ a test for	يقوم بعمل اختبار لـ
in a tournament/a competition	مشترك فى بطولة/مسابقة
score ▶ a goal	يسجل هدفًا
the Africa Cup of Nations	كأس الأمم الأفريقية
the Ministry of Health	وزارة الصحة
the Ministry of Youth and Sports	وزارة الشباب و الرياضة

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

a prize for	جائزة فى/من أجل
a way to + inf.	طريقة لـ
at any time	فى أى وقت
at Khan el-Khalili	فى خان الخليلى
by night	بحلول الليل
come to	يأتى إلى
in life	فى الحياة
on the Nile	فى النيل
talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع
the best at	الأفضل فى
try to + inf.	يحاول أن
work with	يعمل مع

Lesson 4

at a handball competition	فى مسابقة كرة اليد
at the stadium	فى الإستاد
at the tournament	فى البطولة
on the TV	فى التلفاز
thank for	يشكر على

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 4

inside	بالداخل	outside	بالخارج	possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3	dream	يحلم	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
Lesson 4	hold	يحتوى/يستوعب	held	held

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3

app (n)	تطبيق	software you can use on your computer or phone
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	an event in which people try to be the best at something
create (v)	ينشئ/يبتكر	to make something new
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mai ..... a prize for coming first in the competition.
a) earned b) gained c) won d) lost

2 Mohamed Sherief ..... an amazing goal yesterday.
a) scored b) got c) took d) kept

3 The word "big" means .....
a) small b) tiny c) messy d) large

Answers (1 c) (2 a) (3 a)

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What are your favourite hobbies?

1. Read Judy's biography of her friend Aya. Tick the things Aya has done in her life.

SB page 48





My friend Aya has always loved writing stories[1] and poems[2]. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote! She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative[3]. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts[4] already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing!

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream is to create an app[5] to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit! Maybe we can go travelling together[6].

(1) قصص
(2) قصائد شعر
(3) مبدع
(4) حفلات موسيقية
(5) تطبيق
(6) معًا/سويًا

Post-reading question:
Are these sentences true or false?

1. Aya worked as a volunteer. ( )
2. Aya travelled to another country. ( )

Lesson 3

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Which apps on your mobile do you like best?

4. Listen to the interview. What has Haytham created? What does it do?

SB Page 49



Interviewer: So Haytham, you are only 18 years old and you have already created[1] an app[2], is that right?

Haytham : Yes! I created an app last year.

Interviewer: What does your app do?

Haytham : It's an app to help people organise[3] their schoolwork and homework. I needed all my work and timetables to be in the same place so I made it to help me! Then my friends liked it too so I decided to let other people use it, too!

Interviewer: That sounds great! When can we use it?

Haytham : People have used it in a few schools so you can use it now.

Interviewer: Have you created any other apps yet?

Haytham : No, I haven't yet, but I have lots of ideas!

Interviewer: Have you got a job at a big technology company yet?!

Haytham : No, not yet! I have already talked to some about my ideas but I haven't finished school yet and I want to go to university too.

(1) يبتكر
(2) تطبيق
(3) ينظم

Post-listening question:

- Do you think Haytham's new app is useful? Why/Why not?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you like to play or watch handball?

2. *Read the newspaper article quickly and answer the questions.* SB page 50

IN THE BUBBLE(1)





Today, the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship(2) in Egypt finished. It has been the biggest handball tournament(3) ever. The Egyptian team did an excellent job and reached the **quarter finals** (the last eight). There were over 600 competitors(4) from 32 countries. They have played over 100 games and scored more than 5,500 goals! All of this was during the coronavirus pandemic(5). Many people said it wasn't possible, but the contest in Egypt has been fantastic!

The medical team(6) have worked for months to make the tournament safe. Firstly, there haven't been any spectators(7). Also, the players and staff have had tests for coronavirus every 48 hours. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside this 'bubble'. These hotels all have a health centre and every team has had a doctor to work with them. Lots of cleaners have worked day and night to clean the stadiums and the hotels and make them safe.

The medical team were from the Ministry of Health(8) and the Ministry of Youth and Sports(9). They have done such an incredible job that the organisers(10) of the 2021 Olympics(11) in Japan have asked them for their advice. What an amazing achievement(12)!

(1) فقاعة (طبية)
(2) البطولة
(3) دورة
(4) متنافسون
(5) جائحة فيروس كورونا
(6) الفريق الطبى
(7) مشاهدون
(8) وزارة الصحة
(9) وزارة الشباب والرياضة
(10) منظمون
(11) الألعاب الأوليمبية
(12) إنجاز

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. Some people thought it was impossible to have the contest. ( )
2. Everyone working at the tournament stayed in the same hotel. ( )
3. There were 600 teams in the contest. ( )

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What's your favourite sport?

3. Look at the words in bold in the text. Replace each one with a word from the box that has a similar meaning.

WB page 105



Egypt has already won the Africa Cup of Nations[1] seven times. That is a fantastic (an incredible[2]) achievement! In 2023, the contest **(tournament)** will be in the Ivory Coast[3], who have already been winners **(Champions)** twice before. The players **(competitors)** will be from 23 other countries and the games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium, in Abidjan[4], holds 60,000 people **(spectators)**. The organisers are sure that it will be a great success[5].

(1) كأس الأمم الإفريقية
(2) لا يصدق
(3) ساحل العاج
(4) مدينة أبيدجان
(5) نجاح

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. Egypt won the Africa Cup of Nations five times. ( )
2. In 2023, tournament will be in the Ivory Coast. ( )
3. The players will be from 25 other countries. ( )
4. The biggest stadium, in Abidjan, holds 600,000 people. ( )

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'm sure you have good ideas; you are ..... .
a) noisy b) creative c) naughty d) pleased

2 I felt really ..... before the interview. I was very worried.
a) nervous b) creative c) happy d) calm

3 He wrote some ..... in English.
a) paintings b) posters c) poems d) charts

4 There's an ..... on my phone tells me how to organise my study.
a) omelette b) organiser c) oven d) app

5 A ..... is an event in which people try to be the best at something. WB
a) goal b) score c) prize d) competition

6 He flew the ..... over to France.
a) bus b) ferry c) motorbike d) aeroplane

7 To become a ....., you have to train very hard.
a) champion b) contest c) tournament d) loser

8 To stay in business, you must do better than your ..... .
a) aeroplanes b) competitors c) champions d) losers

9 There were nearly 80,000 ..... in the stadium, and they all enjoyed the sports. WB
a) spectators b) winners c) losers d) awards

10 The coronavirus ..... is still out of control in many countries.
a) concert b) pandemic c) band d) pond

11 There are only eight teams left, so this is the ..... . WB
a) end b) conclusion c) finals d) quarter-finals

12 Hedaya Malak won a bronze ..... at the last Olympics.
a) metal b) modal c) medal d) model

13 Doctors take turns in the mobile ..... team.
a) app b) medical c) smart d) software

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The ..... of the championship begin today.
a) finals b) winners c) contests d) losers

2 Our school has a chess ..... every year. A lot of people want to enter. WB
a) pandemic b) champions c) race d) competition

3 Tarek was a/an ..... of the concert. He asked important musicians to play at it. WB
a) spectator b) player c) competitor d) organiser

4 Ma Long is a/an ..... table tennis player. He wins all his matches easily.
a) terrible b) incredible c) impossible d) bad

5 I would like to thank all of the ..... for working so hard in the hotel today. WB
a) spectators b) staff c) winners d) players

6 My brother, is intelligent; he ..... an app that helps students to organise their time.
a) took b) created c) did d) went

7 We are going to have a ..... around the city this afternoon.
a) guide b) travel c) tourist d) tour

8 The children sang two songs at the school ..... .
a) team b) tournament c) concert d) champion

9 We ..... a goal in the first minute of the game.
a) won b) scored c) took d) gave

10 The players and staff have had tests ..... coronavirus every 48 hours.
a) for b) at c) by d) with

11 Egyptians felt proud of Feryal Abdelaziz because she was able to ..... the gold medal in the Olympics.
a) organise b) give c) win d) score

12 There will be a prize ..... the winner.
a) for b) to c) at d) in

13 Go to your doctor and ..... for advice.
a) give b) make c) ask d) have

(B) Language

The present perfect with yet and already:

1 already: بالفعل:

تستخدم فى وسط جملة المضارع التام أى بعد (have/has) أو آخر الجملة لتدل على أن الحدث قد تم فعلًا.

Subject + have/has + **already** + P.P.

- She has **already** written a book of stories.

Subject + have/has + P.P. + **already**.

- They have played in two concerts **already**.

2 yet: حتى الآن/بعد:

تستخدم فى آخر الجملة المنفية للمضارع التام وأيضًا آخر السؤال مع المضارع التام.

Subject + haven't/hasn't + P.P. + **yet**.

- She hasn't been to another country **yet**.
- I haven't done my homework **yet**.

Have/Has + subject + P.P. + **yet**?

- Has she played a musical instrument **yet**?
- Have the girls cleaned the house **yet**?

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (have) finished my homework yet.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't) لوجود كلمة (yet) التى تأتى مع النفى.

2. Sandy ..... (already/do) the washing up.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has already done) لوجود كلمة already الدالة على المضارع التام.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (already have) had my lunch.
2. Roaa hasn't studied her lessons ..... (already).
3. ..... (Did) you visited your grandparents yet?

Answers

1 have already
2 yet
3 Have

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Have you finished your food .....?
a) already b) yet c) for d) since

2 I haven't told anyone about my decision ..... . Please, keep it secret.
a) yet b) never c) ever d) already

3 I've had lunch ....., but I'll join you for coffee.
a) yet b) already c) for d) since

4 Our neighbours ..... the old tree already.
a) have cut b) cut c) are cutting d) will cut

5 We haven't studied French ..... .
a) already b) yet c) for d) ever

6 ..... from London yet?
a) Have they returned b) Will they return
c) Do they return d) Are they returning

7 I ..... it yet. I'll do it after dinner.
a) don't finish b) didn't finish
c) have finished d) haven't finished

8 **A:** Where's Waleed? **B:** He hasn't arrived ..... .
a) ever b) never c) yet d) already

9 **A:** Have you finished doing your work? **B:** Not ..... .
a) already b) yet c) for d) since

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He ..... (already/talk) to some companies about his ideas. SB

2 I ..... (wash) my shirts yet.

3 People in a few schools have used the app ..... (yet). SB

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 He didn't eat Chinese food. (yet)
.....

2 The teacher has given the results of the last exam. (already)
.....

3 I don't want to see that film again. (already)
.....

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about sports tournaments التحدث عن البطولات الرياضية

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف | Response جملة الرد

Have you ever watched a sports tournament at a stadium or on the TV?
هل سبق لك وشاهدت بطولة رياضية فى الإستاد أو على شاشة التلفاز؟

Yes, I have.
نعم.

Which one? Who won?
أى بطولة؟ وما الفريق الفائز؟

I watched the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt. Denmark won.
نعم، شاهدت بطولة العالم لكرة اليد للرجال ٢٠٢١ بمصر. وفاز بها منتخب الدنمارك.

Did you enjoy it?
هل استمتعت بها؟

Yes, of course.
نعم بالطبع.

Have you ever been in a tournament or a competition (for sport, music, art, etc.)? What did you do?
هل سبق لك واشتركت ببطولة أو منافسة رياضية أو موسيقية أو فنية؟ ماذا فعلت؟

Yes, I have been in a football competition at school. Our team has won the cup.
نعم، لقد اشتركت بمسابقة رياضية بالمدرسة وقد فاز فريقنا بالكأس.

Did you enjoy the competition?
هل استمتعت بالمسابقة؟

Yes, I enjoyed it very much.
نعم، استمتعت بها كثيرًا جدًا.

Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Ali who's going to the stadium.

Ahmed: Why are you in a hurry? Where are you going?

Ali : (1)..... .

Ahmed: (2).....?

Ali : To watch the handball tournament.

Ahmed: (3)..... to a stadium yet.

Ali : (4).....?

Ahmed: Yes, I have watched a football tournament on the TV.

Ali : (5).....?

Ahmed: Yes, I enjoyed it a lot. I like football.

Ali : We can go together. I have an extra ticket.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend if he/she has ever watched a tournament.

.....

2. You want to know which tournament your friend watched.

.....

3. You ask your friend if he/she enjoyed the last tournament.

.....

4. Your friend wants to know if you have ever been in a tournament.

.....

5. You tell your friend you watched a tournament on TV.

.....

6. You tell your father you won a prize.

.....

تطبيق الأضواء
تابع مستواك الدراسى أسبوعيًا من خلال
تقارير وإحصائيات شاملة لجميع المواد.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال
www.aladwaa.com

Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eslam and Sameh are talking about sports.

Sameh : Hello, are you going to do anything tonight?

Eslam : Yes, there's an important match tonight.

Sameh : (1).....?

Eslam : Of course, I'm going to watch it.

Sameh : (2).....?

Eslam : Arsenal and Liverpool are playing tonight.

Sameh : (3)..... in football.

Eslam : Not interested! (4).....?

Sameh : In fact, I haven't watched any sports tournaments.

Eslam : I think (5)..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your friend if he/she is interested in watching sports.

.....

2 Your teacher wants to know which tournament you took part in.

.....

3 You tell your friend you were in a basketball tournament.

.....

4 You ask your friend if he/she won a tournament before.

.....

5 You are asked about your favourite sports tournament.

.....

6 You ask your friend if he/she has ever watched a tournament at the stadium.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about a tournament or a competition
كيفية الكتابة عن بطولة أو مسابقة

- What kind of competition?
- Where was it?
- When was it?
- How many competitors were in it?
- Who won the competition?
- Did you enjoy it? Why/Why not?

Writing tips

You should start your paragraph with a good clear and simple topic sentence which introduces the topic clearly.

يجب أن تبدأ فقرتك بجملة رئيسية واضحة وبسيطة تتضمن الموضوع والفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.

Example

"The 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt"

I like handball very much. It is my favourite sport. I was so proud that the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship was held in Egypt. It was from the 13th to the 31st of January 2021. It was also the third World Championship held in Africa, the second in Egypt, and the first to be held outside of Europe since 2015. There were over 600 competitors from 32 countries. The 32 teams were divided into eight groups of four teams each. It was a great event. The medical team has worked for months to make the tournament safe. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside a bubble. These hotels all have a health centre and every team has had a doctor to work with them. We were all very proud of our beloved country and the success of organising the championship.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "A competition you like":

A competition I entered

Lessons 3&4 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada asks Sarah if she took part in sports competitions.

Nada : Hello, Sarah. Do you like sports?

Sarah: Hi, Nada. (1)..... .

Nada : (2).....?

Sarah: Yes, I took part in a tournament when I was at school.

Nada : (3).....?

Sarah: I entered Women's Football competition.

Nada : Have you won before?

Sarah: Yes, (4)..... . We have won the Cup.

Nada : (5)..... it now?

Sarah: In fact, I don't have much free time to practise it.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your friend if he/she has ever been in a tournament.

.....

2 You want to know if your father entered a sports competition.

.....

3 Your friend asks you which tournament you won.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'm reading a ..... of Alexander the Great.
a) theatre b) film c) CV d) biography

2 He can play nearly every ..... instrument. He's the best musician ever.
a) musical b) music c) musician d) musicians

3 Sam needs to see a doctor because he has a bad ..... while sleeping.
a) dream b) goal c) champion d) team

4 Although he had only entered the ..... for fun, he won the first prize.
a) contest b) bubble c) staff d) winner

5 There were more than 11,000 ..... at the Rio Olympics, but only a few of them won medals!
a) spectators b) competitors c) staff d) workers

WB

6 There's a good woman clinic at the ..... centre on Wednesday afternoons.
a) wealthy b) wealth c) health d) healthy

7 The swimming team is in training for the ..... . It's a great championship.
a) Olympics b) gymnastics c) athletics d) sports

8 Hassan has talked to three schools about pollution, but he hasn't given his speech to businesses ..... . WB
a) never b) already c) ever d) yet

9 My kitchen smells really nice because I've finished baking some cookies .....
a) never b) just c) yet d) already

10 Engineers have already designed the bridge, but we ..... it yet. WB
a) have finished b) haven't finished
c) finished d) didn't finish

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Haytham ..... (create) any other apps yet. SB
2 Have you finished that book ..... (already)?
3 Susan ..... (already/send) the email.

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 He doesn't have a car. (bought
.....
2 Surely, he tidied his room. (already
.....
3 He is still eating his breakfast. (yet
.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"What have/haven't you done to achieve your future goals?"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB Pages 51 - 53
WB Pages 106 - 108

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5			
broken (adj)	مكسور	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
news (n)	خبر/أخبار	result (n)	نتيجة
perform (ed) (v)	يؤدى	Well done!	أحسنت!
Lesson 6			
aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	recycled water	المياه المعاد تدويرها
connect (ed) (v)	يربط/يوصل	scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
culture (n)	ثقافة	scientist (n)	عالم
driving test (n)	اختبار قيادة	swimmer (n)	سباح
engineering (n)	الهندسة	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
environment (n)	البيئة	teenager (n)	مراهق
international (adj)	دولى/عالمى	used water	المياه المستخدمة من قبل
natural (adj)	طبيعى	water pollution (n)	تلوث الماء

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5			
fact file	ملف الحقائق	share (d) (v)	يشارك
Polish (adj)	بولندى	short story	قصة قصيرة
Lesson 6			
Canada (n)	دولة كندا	preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادى
Columbia University (n)	جامعة كولومبيا	science (n)	مادة العلوم
great (adj)	عظيم	Society for Science	جمعية العلوم
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	Switzerland (n)	دولة سويسرا
Italy (n)	دولة إيطاليا	the highest score	أعلى الدرجات
NASA International Space Apps Challenge	تحدى التطبيقات الفضائية الدولية لناسا	Tokyo (n)	مدينة طوكيو

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

come	▶ first/second	يأتى الأول/الثانى	grow	▶ plants	يزرع نباتات
clean	▶ dirty water	ينظف المياه الملوثة	have	▶ a place at a top university	لديه مكان فى جامعة مرموقة
do	▶ an exam	يؤدى الامتحان		▶ some good news	لديه بعض الاخبار الجيدة
	well	يؤدى جيدًا	learn	▶ a new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة
get	▶ a score	يحصل على الدرجة	tell	▶ news	يروى الاخبار
	an award	يحصل على جائزة	win	▶ a contest	يفوز بمسابقة
	married	يتزوج		fourth place	يفوز بالمركز الرابع
	the results of	يحصل على نتائج		an award	يفوز بجائزة
give	▶ an award for	يعطى جائزة من أجل	write	▶ piano music	يؤلف موسيقى البيانو
solve	▶ a problem	يحل مشكلة			

Lesson 6

get	▶ a scholarship	يحصل على منحة دراسية	find	▶ a scholarship	يجد منحة دراسية
	dressed	يرتدى/يلبس	follow	▶ dreams	يتبع الاحلام
	home	يصل إلى البيت	start	▶ a company	يبدأ فى تأسيس شركة

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

at a hospital for	فى مستشفى لـ	from the age of	من عمر سن
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	respond to	يرد على
for everyone	للجميع	surprised by	مندهش بواسطة/بـ

Lesson 6

a competition for	مسابقة لـ	look after	يعتنى بـ
connect with	يرتبط/يتصل بـ	return to	يعود إلى
get into	يلتحق بـ	scholarship for/to	منحة دراسية لدى
happy for	سعيد لـ	start of	بداية لـ
in Egyptian history	فى التاريخ المصرى	work on a school project	يعمل فى مشروع مدرسى

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5 win	يكسب/يفوز	won	won
Lesson 6 find	يجد	found	found

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 6 A biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية	is the story of a person's life, and is written by someone else
STEM (n)	مدرسة خاصة بالتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات	Technology, Engineering and Maths School

Language Notes

1 Exclamation mark صيغة التعجب

How + adj. الصفة! / What + (a/an) + adj. الصفة + n. الاسم!

- How **amazing!**
- What an **amazing** achievement!

2 Find a way for شخص + to + inf. يجد طريقة لـ

- Fatma El- Banna found a natural way for villagers to clean dirty water.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mo Salah was given an award ..... scoring the most goals in the Premier League.
a) at b) with c) for d) in

2 Yunis has passed his driving test! He did really ..... .
a) noisy b) bad c) good d) well

3 ..... wonderful! Mona got married last week.
a) What b) How c) Why d) When

WB

Answers (1 c) (2 d) (3 b)

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How do you feel before an exam?

2. Listen to Fareeda. What is the good news she is telling her friend, Malak?

SB page 51





Malak : Hi, Fareeda!

Fareeda : Hi Malak, guess what? I just got the results(1) of my music exam(2)!

Malak : Yes? How did you do?!

Fareeda : I passed!

Malak : Of course you did! Well done! Great job!

Fareeda : But also, I got the highest score in the class!

Malak : Wow, you did really well - what an amazing achievement(3)!

Fareeda : I can't believe(4) it, I was so nervous(5) doing the exam.

Malak : I knew you would do well. I'm really happy for you! You worked really hard.

Fareeda : Thanks Malak.

(1) نتائج
(2) اختبار
(3) إنجاز
(4) يصدق
(5) عصبي/متوتر

Post-listening question: - How did Malak do at the music exam?

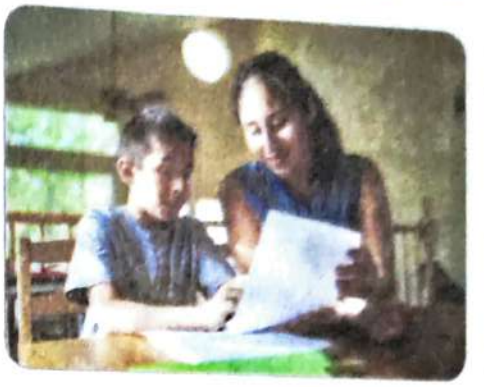


Lesson 5

Listening Text

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 106



Mother : You look happy, Nader.
Nader : I am! I've won a short story competition!
Mother : Well done! Was that a competition at your school?
Nader : No, it was a short story competition for everyone.
Mother : For everyone? What an amazing achievement. Didn't you win the school competition last year?
Nader : Yes, I came second in the class, so I worked harder this year!
Mother : I knew you would do well. You worked really hard.
Nader : Thanks. I'll get the award next week.
Mother : I'm really happy for you! I'll come and watch!

Lesson 5

Reading Text

4. Read the email from your friend. Write a reply in your notebook.

WB page 106

Hi!



I've got some good news. I've won an award! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for children. We play games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital decided to give my family an award for our work. We're getting it next week! Can you come and watch us get it?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you have a hero? Who is he/she?

1. *Put these sentences from a biography about Nada Zaher in the correct order.* *SB page 52*



(1) Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt.

(2) As a child, she played a lot of tennis.

(3) When she was a teenager[1], she found out that she had a sports scholarship[2] to go to Columbia University[3] in the USA.

(4) Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis.

(5) After university, she returned to Egypt and decided to help more international athletes[4] to study in other countries.

(6) Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow their dreams[5].

(7) So, she started a company to connect athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships.

(1) مراهق
(2) منحة دراسية
(3) جامعة كولومبيا
(4) رياضيون
(5) أحلام

Post-reading questions:

1. Where is Nada from?
2. Why did she start the company?

Project

Make a fact file about a young role model.

1. What is a role model? Think of some famous young role models. Why are they role models? Make notes.
2. Work in small groups. Compare the information you found and choose one of the people for your project.
3. Work together to research more information about this person's life.
4. Make a fact file about this person for your classroom. You might include:
   - pictures of the person
   - what they have achieved
   - a timeline of their life
   - why you think they are a role model.
5. Compare your fact files with other groups. Do you think they are all good role models?

Lesson 6 — Reading Text

1. Complete the biography with these time expressions. WB page 107



Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. **As a child**, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist(1). **After** she finished Preparatory School, she started at the Science, Technology(2), Engineering(3) and Maths school (STEM) in Alexandria. She **then** learnt more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment(4) and Egypt's culture(5). **When she was** at school, she came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge(6), a problem solving competition for scientists around the world.

Later, she worked on a school project. She found a natural(7) way for villages to clean dirty water and to recycle used water. The recycled water is used to help plants to grow, and the project can also help to stop water pollution(8). She sent her project to the Society for Science(9) in the USA. In 2021, her project won fourth place in another international competition for science and engineering.

Now, Fatma wants to do more things to help science.

(1) عالم
(2) تكنولوجيا
(3) هندسة
(4) البيئة
(5) ثقافة
(6) تحدى التطبيقات الفضائية الدولية لناسا
(7) طبيعى
(8) تلوث الماء
(9) جمعية العلوم

Lesson 7 — Listening Text

3. Complete the dialogue with these words. Then listen and check your answers. SB page 53

Fares : Guess what? I have good **news**!
Mazen : What is it?
Fares : I have got a **scholarship** to a university in Canada!
Mazen : Well **done**! That's incredible.
Fares : Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.
Mazen : I'm really **happy** for you. You will play at an important **tournament** soon!

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You'll never get an award because you ..... so badly!
a) form b) perform c) introduce d) produce

2 The handball team have won the championship! What an amazing .....! WB
a) reason b) biography c) achievement d) cause

3 The band wants to do a sound check before the ..... .
a) concert b) match c) experiment d) score

4 She got a ..... to study at Cambridge University.
a) scholarship b) relationship c) timetable d) school bell

5 He's worked in the tea business since he was a/an ..... . He was about 17.
a) baby b) teenager c) child d) infant

6 My school ..... us with schools in England.
a) pushes b) communicates c) contacts d) connects

7 Farida Osman is the fastest female ..... in Egypt and Africa.
a) sailor b) swimmer c) driver d) pilot

8 She learnt how to look after the environment and Egypt's ..... .
a) international b) society c) culture d) school

9 Her project won fourth place in another international competition for science and ..... . WB
a) engineers b) school c) engineering d) society

10 You've passed your ..... test. Congratulations! You can buy a car now.
a) driving b) diving c) listening d) speaking

11 His ..... leg is the direct result of his own carelessness.
a) brake b) broke c) break d) broken

12 It will take a long time to ..... a broken fence.
a) repair b) damage c) organise d) destroy

13 The ..... is open to all readers in the town. You can take part in.
a) competitor b) competition c) comparison d) computer

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I ..... some good news! I have passed my exams.
a) say b) stay c) spend d) have

2 He ..... a bad score in his last exams.
a) left b) finished c) started d) got

3 **A:** Look! I've finished my painting! **B:** Great ..... . Well done! WB
a) job b) help c) sport d) business

4 The teacher encourages the students to ..... their dreams.
a) leave b) advise c) achieve d) practise

5 He ..... an award for his services to the disabled.
a) gave b) got c) sent d) arrived

6 Most girls take a long time to ..... dressed.
a) make b) put c) get d) wear

7 We were incredibly surprised ..... the price.
a) of b) with c) at d) by

8 She found a way for villagers to ..... dirty water. WB
a) clean b) move c) win d) learn

9 You should ..... your teeth before you go to bed.
a) paint b) repair c) clean d) damage

10 All students study hard to ..... a place at a top university.
a) give b) have c) do d) make

11 Never stop learning new ..... .
a) sales b) scales c) skulls d) skills

12 How did she ..... to the news?
a) respond b) answer c) replay d) reuse

13 Most young people want to ..... a scholarship for the USA.
a) stay b) make c) give d) find

(B) Skills

1. Speaking

Responding to good news
الرد على الأخبار الجيدة

- Well done!	- أحسنت!
- Great news!	- أخبار عظيمة !
- That's incredible.	- هذا لا يصدق!
- Great job. Well done!	- أداء عظيم. أحسنت!
- I knew you would do well.	- كنت أعلم أنك ستؤدى جيدًا.
- You did really well.	- لقد أديت بشكل جيد حقًا.
- What an amazing achievement!	- يا له من إنجاز رائع!
- I'm really happy for you.	- أنا حقًا سعيد من أجلك.
- You worked really hard.	- لقد عملت بجد حقًا.

Speaking Exercises

1 **Complete the following dialogue:**

Mazin congratulates Fares who got a scholarship.

Mazin : Hello, Fares. How are you?

Fares : I'm fine, very fine!

Mazin : (1)..... happy. What's the matter?

Fares : Guess what? I have good news!

Mazin : (2).....?

Fares : I have got a scholarship to a university in Canada!

Mazin : (3).....!

Fares : Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.

Mazin : (4)..... for you. You will play at an important tournament soon!

Fares : (5)..... your kind feelings.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You tell your parents you have passed the exams.

.....

2. Your friend tells you that he/she has won an award.

.....

3. You hear that your sister did well in her exams.

.....

4. You know that your friend has passed his/her driving test.

.....

5. You tell your mother that you have learnt a new skill.

.....

6. You're told that you worked really hard.

.....

Time to Practise

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You know that your brother got a scholarship.

.....

2. You tell your parents you have entered a writing competition.

.....

3. Your friend has just told you some good news.

.....

4. You want to know why your friend looks so happy.

.....

5. Your friend tells you that his/her sister got married last week.

.....

6. You are asked about the reason for being happy.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write a biography of a famous sportsman

كيفية الكتابة عن سيرة شخص رياضى مشهور

A biography is the story of a person's life, and is written by someone else. You should:

- Gather information about the person you're writing about, things you want your reader to know about him/her (who he/she is, when he was born, his education, what he's known for...).
- Include your opinion of his/her achievements.
- Use adjectives and adverbs to make your writing interesting.

Writing tips

The way you organise your sentences helps the reader to understand better.

الطريقة التى تنظم بها الجمل التى تكتبها تساعد القارئ على الفهم بشكل أفضل.

To : hadeer@gmail.com
From : shady@yahoo.com
Subject : A famous sportsman

Hello Hadeer,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my role model. He's Ali Ahmed Mahmoud Ali Khalafalla. He is an Egyptian Olympic swimmer. He was born in Cairo. He was born on 13th May, 1996. Now he is 25 years old. He started swimming at the age of six. Like any other successful person, Ali Khalafalla worked very hard to be successful in his life. He spends a lot of time on developing his skills. He studied in the USA for three years. He went to Rio Olympics in 2016. After breaking the Egyptian record that stood strong for 25 years, he set a new Egyptian record in California in 2017. He was the fastest swimmer in Egyptian history in 2018. He swam at Tokyo Olympics in 2021. Write soon.

Yours, Shady.

Check Point: Write an email of 110 words to your friend Esraa to tell her about your favourite sports star. Your name is Donia. Your email address is donia@student.com. Your friend's email address is esraa@yahoo.com.

Lessons 5&6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Bido won a contest!

Bido : Hi, Salah. How are you?

Salah : (1)..... .

Bido : I have some good news! Guess what?

Salah : (2)....., please?

Bido : I have won a contest.

Salah : (3).....!

Bido : I trained hard to get it.

Salah : (4)..... at your school?

Bido : No, it was for everyone.

Salah : (5)..... for you.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You tell a friend you have just found a good job.

.....

2 You have heard that your brother has got a prize.

.....

3 Your friend responds to your success kindly.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't go out tonight because I am working ..... a school project.
a) in **b) on** c) at d) for

2 I've repaired the chair that was ..... .
a) disappeared **b) hidden** c) stolen d) broken

3 My cousin Lara is ..... married next month.
a) getting **b) making** c) having d) doing

4 I knew she would ..... well. She worked really hard.
a) take **b) have** c) do d) make

5 You can be proud of your ..... .
a) achievement b) tournament c) environment d) movement

6 Did you win the school short story .....?
a) spectator b) competition c) winner d) loser

7 I ..... my exam results today.
a) got b) gave c) took d) did

8 ..... the bedroom yet?
a) Did you clean b) Have you cleaned
c) Do you clean d) Are you cleaning

9 They've gone shopping ..... .
a) since b) for c) already d) yet

10 Randa's aunt has ..... a baby!
a) have b) had c) having d) to having

WB

4 Fill in the gaps:

Egypt has (1)..... won the Africa Cup of Nations seven times. The last time (2)..... in 2010. In 2023, the contest will be in the Ivory Coast, who have already (3)..... it twice before. Twenty-three countries will join it. It hasn't started (4)..... but all countries are getting ready for it.

5 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Sama to tell her that you have got a scholarship for a university in the USA. Your name is Somaya and your email address is somaya@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sama@student.com.

Unit 5 Review



(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achievement	إنجاز
aged	بالغ من العمر
application	تطبيق
artist	فنان
astronaut	رائد فضاء
athlete	لاعب رياضى
award	جائزة
biography	سيرة شخصية
bubble	فقاعة
business person	رجل/سيدة أعمال
campaigner	ناشط
challenge	تحدٍّ
championship	بطولة
company (y ies)	شركة
competition	مسابقة/منافسة
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
connect (ed)	يربط/يوصل
coronavirus	فيروس كورونا
creative	مبدع/مبتكر
crosswords	الكلمات المتقاطعة
education	التعليم
engineering student	طالب هندسة
finals	نهائيات
form	شكل/نوع
health centre	مركز صحى
health emergency	طوارئ صحية
hold	يحتوى/يستوعب
hyperloop	هايبرلوب (نظام نقل)
international	دولى/عالمى
manager	مدير
mathematician	متخصص بالرياضيات
medical team	الفريق الطبى
musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
musician	موسيقى/موسيقار
nervous	عصبى/متوتر
Olympics	دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية
organisers	المنظمون
pandemic	جائحة/وباء
perform (ed)	يؤدى
poem	قصيدة
quarter-finals	الدور ربع النهائى
role model	قدوة
scholarship	منحة دراسية
space engineer	مهندس فضاء
space engineering	هندسة الفضاء
space scientist	عالم الفضاء
space technology	تكنولوجيا الفضاء
spectators	متفرجون
speech	خطاب/حديث/كلام
sports champion	بطل رياضى
succeed (ed)	ينجح
success	نجاح
take part (in)	يشارك (فى)
teenager	مراهق
transport	نقل/مواصلات
volunteer	متطوع

(B) Language

1 The difference between the present perfect and past simple:

الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط.

(A) The past simple tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

نستخدم الماضى البسيط مع شىء بدأ وانتهى وليس له أثر وذكر وقت الحدث.

- We moved to the city three years ago.

(B) The present perfect tense

زمن المضارع التام

نستخدم المضارع التام مع شىء حدث فى الماضى وله أثر فى الحاضر أو ما زال مستمرًا ولم يحدد وقت الحدوث.

- I have been deaf all my life.

2 The present perfect with yet and already:

- She has played in two concerts **already**.
- She has **already** written a book of stories.
- She hasn't been to another country **yet**.
- Has she played a musical instrument **yet**?

(C) Skills

Speaking

1. Discussing jobs

- **A:** Which university did Samar go to? **B:** She went to Cairo University.
- **A:** What competition did she enter? **B:** She entered a space technology competition.
- **A:** Who was in her team? **B:** Some engineering students from the university.

2. Talking about sports tournaments

- **A:** Have you ever watched a sports tournament at a stadium or on the TV? **B:** Yes, I have.
- **A:** Which one? Who won?
  B: I watched the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt. Denmark won.
- **A:** Have you ever been in a tournament or a competition (for sport, music, art, etc.)? What did you do?
  B: Yes, I have been in a football competition at school. Our team has won the cup.

3. Responding to good news

- Well done! / Great news! / That's incredible! / Great job. Well done!
- I knew you would do well. / You did really well. / What an amazing achievement!
- I'm really happy for you. / You worked really hard.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 5

أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) **Rana** : I've come first at the art competition!

Alaa : .....

B) **Ahmed** : .....?

Mustafa : No, I haven't done my homework yet.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. I'd like to be a computer programmer	a) when she was young.
2. Samar wanted to be an astronaut	b) decided to help more international athletes.
3. Magdy Abdel Sayed has had	c) in the street with his friends.
4. From the age of seven, he played football	d) because I'm good at computers.
5. After university, she returned to Egypt and	e) since she was young.
	f) a lot of challenges in his life.

Answers: 1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( ) 4. ( ) 5. ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about TEN (10) sentences on:

"A biography of a famous person"

Practice 5

Based on Unit 5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samira congratulates Yasser who has a scholarship.

Samira : Hi, Yasser. How are things with you?

Yasser : (1) ....., I have good news!

Samira : (2) .....?

Yasser : I have a scholarship in England.

Samira : (3) .....!

Yasser : I will study there and play handball.

Samira : I know (4) ..... .

Yasser : Well, I trained hard every day to get this scholarship.

Samira : You worked really hard.

Yasser : (5) ..... .

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your father when he started his own company.

.....

2 You ask your friend if he/she has ever been in a tournament.

.....

3 You hear that your friend has scored 4 goals in the final.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt. As a child, she played a lot of tennis. When she was a teenager, she heard that she had a sports scholarship for Columbia University in the USA. Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis. After university, she returned to Egypt and decided to help more international athletes to study in other countries. So, she started a company called Pas-sport to connect athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships. Pas-sport is a platform that gives international student athletes all the information needed to understand the benefits of college athletics in the United States. It also helps college trainers discover global talent. Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow

their dreams and to bring an opportunity to many more international student athletes. Her idea for Pas-sport is to teach young international student athletes about how sport can be used as a passport towards an educational experience in the United States, like tennis did for her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 What sport does Nada Zaher play?

.....

2 In which country did Nada Zaher get her scholarship?

.....

3 Why did she start her company Pas-sport?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 When Nada returned to Egypt, she decided to help more ..... athletes to study in other countries.

a) special b) public c) global d) local

5 Nada Zaher's company helps ..... .

a) athletes b) trainers c) a & b d) none

6 The underlined word "platform" means a/an ..... .

a) website b) office c) university d) college

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The government wants more people to use public ..... instead of private cars.

a) education b) emergency c) equipment d) transport

2 As an ..... student, he will spend five years at university.

a) engineer b) engineering

c) engineers d) engineered

3 I keep a dictionary beside me when I'm doing ..... .

a) crosswords b) crossroads c) passwords d) red cross

4 The writing ..... was very exciting.

a) champion b) competition c) winner d) spectator

5 The Cairo International Stadium can ..... 75,000 spectators.

a) arrive b) get c) score d) hold

6 Soha has got into Cairo University! I knew she would do well. She worked really ..... . WB

a) hard b) good c) bad d) quiet

7 Our school has a chess ..... every year. A lot of people want to enter. WB

a) pandemic b) tournament c) competitor d) invitation

8 ..... you read the newspapers this morning?

a) Have b) Had c) Do d) Were

9 **A:** Are we too late to see the film? **B:** No, it hasn't started ..... .

a) yet b) already c) ever d) for

10 I've ..... won many tournaments in my country, but I haven't been to the Olympics yet. WB

a) already b) yet c) for d) since

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 They ..... (go) home after the concert last night.

2 Marawan ..... (has) bought a new mobile yet.

3 Last year, I ..... (travel) to meetings around the world.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I haven't gone shopping since last week. (I last)

.....

2 He went snorkelling two years ago. (for)

.....

3 We have travelled since 2012. (for)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A person you see as a role model"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 5

Think and Create

Write a paragraph about one of these topics:

1. Disabled people

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What challenges can disabled people face at school or at work?
- How do they achieve their goals? How can we help them?
- What advice do you give to them?



2. A young role model

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What is a role model? Think of some famous young role models.
- Why are they role models?
- Who is your role model? What does he/she achieve?
- Why is he/she your role model? Do you want to be like him/her?



Tips

1 ➤ A suitable title
2 ➤ An introduction
3 ➤ Main ideas and information
4 ➤ Resources



Unit 6 What's wrong?

Objectives of the unit

Reading : An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem

Writing : A paragraph about ways to relax; an email suggesting how to help a friend; a poster helping people with mental health issues

Listening : A conversation about teenage problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems

Speaking : Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems

Language : had to / didn't have to, was / wasn't able to, could / couldn't

Life Skills : Empathy

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

Warm Up

Name these social media sites:













Answer the following questions:

1. How many sites did you name?

2. What is the most useful one for you?

3. Which one do you spend most of your time on?

4. If you had a chance to remove one of these sites from the web, which one would you choose? Why?

Lessons 1 & 2

SB Pages 54-57
WB Pages 109 & 110

(A) Vocabulary

لاحظ الاختصارات الأتية:

(n)	noun
(v)	verb
(adj)	adjective
(adv)	adverb
(prep)	preposition
(conj)	conjunction
(pro)	pronoun

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

abilities (n)	قدرات
achievements (n)	إنجازات
alone (adj/adv)	بمفرده
anxious (adj)	قلِق/مهموم
appearance (n)	مظهر خارجى
billion (n)	مليار
common (adj)	شائع/منتشر
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكترونى
daily (adv)	يومى
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرج
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
glad (adj)	سعيد
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
mental health (n)	الصحة النفسية/العقلية
report (ed) (v)	يبلغ عن/تقرير
scared (adj)	خائف
scary (adj)	مخيف
schoolwork (n)	عمل مدرسى
skills (n)	مهارات
social life (n)	الحياة الاجتماعية
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
spread (v)	ينتشر/ينشر
studies (n)	دراسات
support (ed) (v)	يساند/يدعم/يؤيد
teenager (n)	مراهق
upset (adj)	منزعج

Lesson 2

avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب
behaviour (n)	سلوك
disappoint (ed) (v)	يُحبط/يُخيب أمل
fail (ed) (v)	يفشل/يرسب
lonely (adj)	وحيد/منعزل
secret (n/adj)	سر/سرى
sort (n)	نوع
teen (n)	فى سن المراهقة
understanding (n/adj)	التفاهم/متفاهم

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

every time	كل مرة	receive (d) (v)	يتلقى/يتسلم
height (n)	الطول/الارتفاع	share (d) (v)	يشارك
helpful (adj)	مفيد/مساعد	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
importance (n)	أهمية	terrible (adj)	سيئ جدًا
important (adj)	هام	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
life/lives (n)	حياة/حيوات	the UK (n)	المملكة المتحدة
million (n)	مليون	thousand (n)	ألف

Lesson 2

advice (n)	نصيحة	library (n)	مكتبة
advise (d) (v)	ينصح	offer (n)	عرض
British (adj)	بريطانى	password (n)	كلمة السر/المرور
change (d) (v)	يغير	person (n)	شخص
clever (adj)	ماهر/ذكى	science subjects	المواد العلمية
even if	حتى لو	situation (n)	موقف
however (conj)	ومع ذلك	somebody (pro)	شخص ما
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	the next day	فى اليوم التالى

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

get ▶ bullied	يتعرض للتنمر	in ▶ a positive way = positively	بطريقة إيجابية
have ▶ a haircut	يقص شعره	on ▶ the other hand	ومن ناحية أخرى
how much time	كم من الوقت؟	What's wrong?	ما الخطب؟

Lesson 2

any more	بعد الآن/أى أكثر من ذلك	say ▶ unkind things	يقول أشياء غير لطيفة
do ▶ badly	يؤدى بشكل سيئ	show ▶ understanding	يظهر التفاهم
English speaking test	اختبار التحدث باللغة الإنجليزية	tell ▶ a secret	يخبر سرًا
go ▶ to work	يذهب إلى العمل	with ▶ similar interests	باهتمامات متشابهة
keep ▶ secrets	يحتفظ بالأسرار		

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

a long way from	على مسافة طويلة من	look after	يعتنى بـ
around	حوالى	match to	صل بـ
anxious about	قلق بشأن	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
embarrassed about	محرج بسبب	spend on	يقضى وقتا فى
for me	بالنسبة لى	use of	استخدام لـ
go back to	يعود إلى	What kind of	ما نوع
go out	يخرج	worry about	يقلق على

Lesson 2

belong to	ينتمى إلى	offer to + inf.	يعرض أن
different from/to	مختلف عن	opinion about/of	رأى فى
difficult for	صعب لـ	unhappy with	غير سعيد مع
for a meeting	من أجل اجتماع	unkind to	غير عطوف مع

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

unkind غير عطوف — kind عطوف/طيب

positive إيجابى — negative سلبى

Lesson 2

agree يوافق — disagree لا يوافق

essential أساسى — unessential غير أساسى

necessary ضرورى — unnecessary غير ضرورى

possible ممكن — impossible مستحيل

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 1 spend	يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent
Lesson 2 get up	ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 1		
achievement (n)	إنجاز	something important that you have done
appearance (n)	مظهر	the way that someone or something looks
billion (n)	مليار	a thousand million
social life (n)	حياة اجتماعية	the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people
support (v)	يدعم/يساند	help and encourage someone
Lesson 2		
a secret (n)	سر	something that you don't want other people to know
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	having no friends with you
show understanding	يظهر التفاهم	showing that you understand a person's situation

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's ..... to have a passport if you want to travel abroad.
a) unnecessary **b)** unessential **c)** impossible **d)** essential

2 A billion is a ..... million.
a) hundred **b)** thousand **c)** ten **d)** fifty

3 How much time do you spend ..... social media?
a) on **b)** with **c)** to **d)** in

Answers 1 d) 2 b) 3 a)

Language Notes

1. **feel/get + adj.** الصفة
   - You shouldn't feel **bad** about being tall.
   - For me, exams are a problem. I get very **anxious** about them.

يشعر بـ

2. **spend + v + ing**
   - My advice is to spend your time **enjoying** yourself.

يقضى وقتا

3. **alone** بمفرده (أى شخص واحد فقط)
   lonely وحيد/منعزل (أى شعور بالوحدة حتى لو كان فى مجموعة)
   - After my family travelled, I lived alone in the house.
   - Although I live with my family, I feel lonely.

4. **someone/everyone/anyone/no one/somebody/everybody/anybody/nobody**

   هذه الكلمات يأتى بعدها فعل مفرد وعند التعويض عليه بضمير تأخذ ضمير جمع
   - **A:** Somebody **is** at home. **B:** Oh, I know **them**. Open the door.

5. **another +** اسم مفرد آخر **/ other +** اسم جمع آخر **/ others** آخرون (بدون اسم بعدها)
   - Would you like to travel to another **country**?
   - Don't play with these boys. There are other **boys** who want to play with you.
   - People shouldn't tell others this sort of information.

6. **have similar interests with someone = You like the same.**
   - I have similar interests with my brother. Both of us like playing tennis.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this shirt. I want ..... one.
   a) another b) other c) others d) the others
2. Everyone is ready. ..... waiting for you.
   a) It is b) She is c) He is d) They are
3. Children spend hours ..... video games.
   a) to playing b) to play c) playing d) play

Answers 1) a 2) d 3) c

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - What problems do you face at school?

1. *Listen to Hisham and Kamal talking about the website on page 54. What problems do they talk about?*

SB Page 55



Hisham : I agree that most of these are common (1) problems for teenagers (2). Most of us aren't completely happy with our appearance (3). I'm embarrassed (4) about being so tall, for example.

Kamal : You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a positive (5) thing! For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious (6) about them.

Hisham : I guess we're all good at different things, and not so good at others. I'm not bad at art or music, but I'm terrible at sports. I always feel that everyone is laughing at me in PE.

Kamal : Cyberbullying (7) is a problem, too. I'm glad I haven't experienced it.

Hisham : Yes, that is really scary (8). For a few months, one of my sister's friends got unkind text messages from someone at her school. It made her feel really upset (9).

Kamal : What did she do?

Hisham : She told a teacher, and the school spoke to all the students about how it could hurt people. Then it stopped.

Kamal : It's good that she talked to someone about it.

Hisham : That's right.

(1) شائع /منتشر
(2) مراهقون
(3) مظهر
(4) محرج
(5) إيجابي
(6) قلق
(7) التنمر الإلكتروني
(8) مخيف
(9) منزعج

Post-listening question: - What's Hisham embarrassed about?

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Are you interested in social media? Why/Why not?

4. *Read the text. What are the positive and negative things it says about social media?*

SB Page 55



Today, nearly four billion (1) people use social media (2) in their daily lives. Some studies have found that around 63% of people report feeling upset (3) and anxious (4) after using social media. On the other hand, social media can be helpful because we can share experiences (5) and support (6) each other. People can spread (7) positive messages this way about the importance of looking after our mental health (8).

(1) مليار
(2) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
(3) منزعج
(4) قلق
(5) خبرات
(6) يدعم
(7) ينشر
(8) الصحة النفسية

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. About four million people use social media. ( )
2. Few people feel upset after using social media. ( )
3. Social media can be helpful. ( )
4. Sharing experiences and supporting each other is very useful. ( )
5. We should look after our mental health. ( )

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What are the problems you are worry about?

2. Read and match the situations 1–5 with what the teenagers worry about a–e.

WB page109

a) achievements

b) appearance

c) cyberbullying

d) skills and abilities

e) social life



(1) b I had a haircut[1] last week and I think it is terrible! I'm embarrassed[2] to go out and see my friends!

(2) e All the students in my class go out all the time and visit each other's houses. I live a long way from the school, so I never go out or see any friends after school.

(3) c Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class unkind messages on social media. I'm worried that I will start receiving them, too.

(4) d I've tried to join[3] an art club, a language club and a music club, but every time I go, I can't do what they suggest. I'm just not good at these things!

(5) a My sister is 18 and she has won lots of competitions[4] and done really well in her exams. I don't think I will ever be as good as her!

(1) قصة شعر
(2) محرج
(3) ينضم/يلتحق بـ
(4) مسابقات

Post-reading question:

Complete the following sentences:

1. Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class .....
2. My sister is 18 and she ..... in her exams.

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Where would you find these kinds of texts?

1. Read the texts quickly and answer the questions. SB page 56

Teen problems



(1) Nobody knows that I failed my English speaking test, and I feel very embarrassed[1] about it. Yesterday, I told my best friend and I said, 'Please don't tell anyone because nobody knows. It's a secret[2]'. The next day, my friend's mother, who is British, offered to help me with my English. I felt very unhappy with my friend because she told somebody. She said she was only trying to help me, but I don't want to tell her any of my secrets any more.

Magda

(1) محرج
(2) سر
(3) وحيدًا
(4) يخيب ظن

(2) I have a lot of friends, but we have very different opinions about things. They say I mustn't talk to some people in the class. We don't always agree, and I feel that I am very different from them. It makes me feel lonely[3].

Salma

(3) My parents want me to be a doctor when I finish school. A doctor has to be good at science subjects, however, and the work is too difficult for me. I don't want to disappoint[4] them, but I really don't think I can be a doctor.

Adam

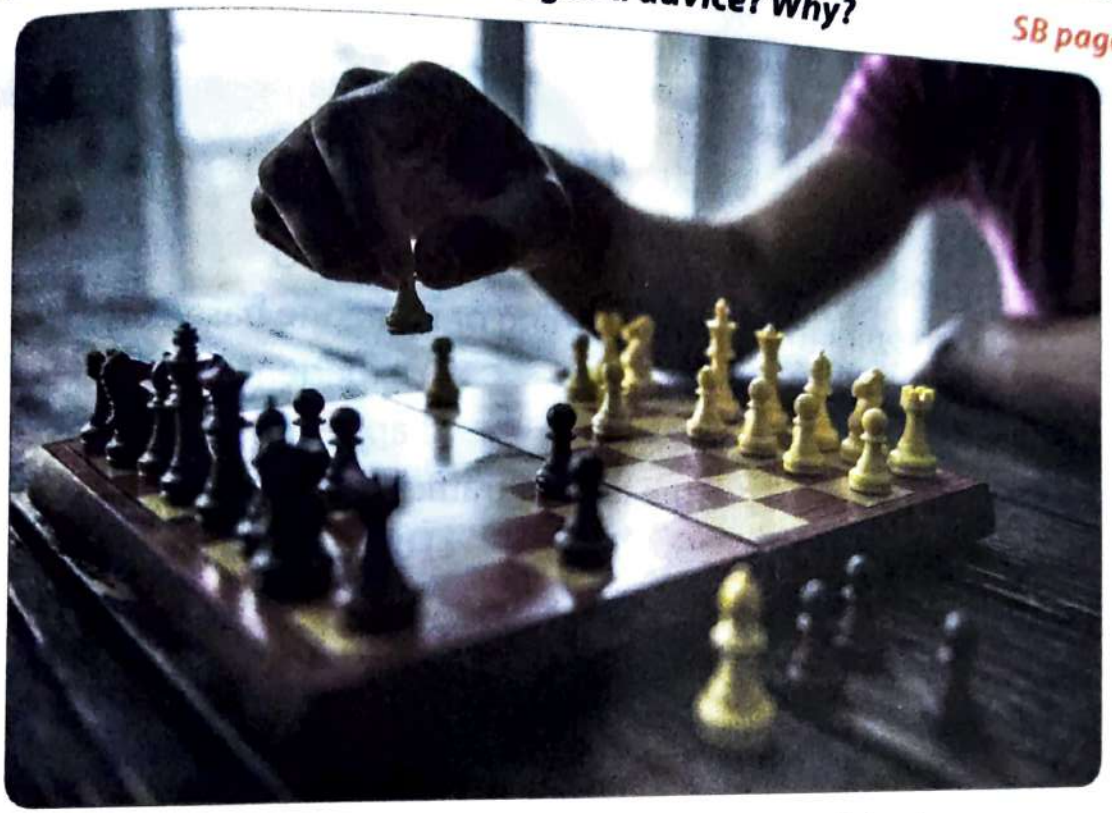
Post-reading questions:
1. What problem was Magda embarrassed about?
2. Why does Salma think her friends are different to her?

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you usually give advice to your friends?

4. Read and match these answers a–c to the people who have the problems in Exercise 1. Do you think this is good advice? Why?

SB page 57



(b) 1 Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret. Friends must keep secrets. However, you don't have to see this as a negative[1] thing since she only wanted to help. Why don't you think about your friend's mother's kind offer?

(c) 2 How about joining a club to meet people with similar interests[2]? You don't have to belong to[3] only one group of friends.

(a) 3 You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more understanding than you think.

(1) سلبي
(2) اهتمامات متشابهة
(3) ينتمي إلى

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. You should talk to your parents and tell them how you feel. ( )
2. Friends mustn't keep secrets. ( )
3. Your parents might be more understanding than you think. ( )

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mr. Kamal takes good decisions. His mental ..... are very good.
a) amounts b) situations c) events d) abilities

2 I like to share my experiences on social ..... .
a) stop b) station c) media d) transport

3 Amani is shy. She gets ..... if we ask her to sing.
a) naughty b) common
c) embarrassed d) worried

4 Don't form an opinion about something or someone based on ..... only.
a) science b) experience
c) disappearance d) appearance

5 Most local people ..... the idea of traffic-free streets.
a) support b) protect c) produce d) advise

6 You have to believe in yourself. That's the ..... of success.
a) situation b) secret c) event d) result

7 Make exercise part of your ..... routine.
a) diary b) dairy c) every day d) daily

8 COVID-19 has ..... all over the world.
a) spread b) flooded c) joined d) displayed

9 Try to show a little more ..... to your friends.
a) reason b) understanding
c) appearance d) cause

10 Don't worry ..... me. I'll be all right.
a) at b) by c) to d) about

11 I haven't ..... a haircut for months!
a) had b) made c) done d) caught

12 Children ..... bullied for different reasons.
a) have b) do c) make d) get

13 ..... means happy.
a) Bored b) Glad c) Disappointed d) Depressed

14 If you want to ..... a secret, you must also hide it from yourself!
a) get b) have c) keep d) make

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The unkind text messages made her feel really ..... . SB
a) noisy b) ugly c) upset d) positive

2 I had an active ..... life when I was at university.
a) society b) socially c) social d) day

3 For me, exams are a problem. I get very ..... about them. SB
a) sad b) anxious
c) positive d) embarrassed

4 If you show ....., you are showing that you understand a person's situation. WB
a) empathy b) understanding c) lonely d) anxious

5 Teachers of English should ..... their students to practise English inside and outside the class.
a) offer b) provide c) hide d) encourage

6 ..... is not something we want to see or hear about at our school. WB
a) Swimming b) Bullying c) Thinking d) Practising

7 Some ..... have proved that heavy smokers could easily have COVID-19.
a) objects b) subjects c) science d) studies

8 I'm sorry to ..... you, but I'm afraid I can't come after all.
a) disappear b) disappoint c) offer d) respect

9 He did not understand the ..... of this topic.
a) different b) difference c) importance d) important

10 Both my daughters are in their ..... . They are twelve and fourteen.
a) tunes b) tons c) tens d) teens

11 We shouldn't ..... unkind things to other people.
a) speak b) talk c) tell d) say

12 Young people shouldn't spend many hours ..... social media.
a) in b) on c) by d) about

13 Be ..... about your future and live a normal life.
a) positive b) negative c) possible d) impossible

(B) Language

الأفعال الناقصة (المضارع/المستقبل)

Modal Verbs

1 Necessity: الضرورة:

A) Subject (الفاعل) + must + inf. المصدر

Use "must" to talk about things that are necessary.

- تستخدم (must) (يجب أن) للتحدث عن الأشياء الضرورية. وتستخدم للتذكير بأهمية فعل شيء، وظروف الإلزام هنا يمكن التحكم فيها.

- Friends must **keep** secrets.

لاحظ أن: - يمكن أن نستخدم (must) مع الدعوة الحارة أو النصيحة القوية.

- You must **come** and try my delicious food.
- Children must **wash** their hands after playing.

- وتتكون فى السؤال كالتالى:

Must + subject (الفاعل) + inf. المصدر ...?

- Must we **go** now? - Yes, we must./ No, we mustn't.

B) has to/ have to

He, She, It, اسم مفرد ⟶ has to + inf. المصدر

I , You , We, They, اسم جمع ⟶ have to + inf. المصدر

Use "have to/has to" when something is essential to do. (when you have no choice.)

- تستخدم (have to/has to) (يجب أن) عندما يكون هناك شيء أساسى وجوهرى للقيام به. وتستخدم أيضًا لتوضيح قواعد لفئة معينة، وظروف الإلزام هنا لا يمكن التحكم فيها.

- Students have to **wear** their uniforms.
- My father has to **go** to work at 7 am.

- وتتكون فى السؤال:

Do/Does + subject (الفاعل) + have to + inf. المصدر ...?

- **A:** Does Sara have to **get** up early on holidays? **B:** No, she doesn't.

Q. word + do/does + subject (الفاعل) + have to + inf. المصدر ...?

- When does she have to **come**?
- What do you have to **do**?

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- All the students ..... (must) to follow the school rules.

الإجابة الصحيحة (have) لوجود to ولأن ظرف الإلزام هنا لا يمكن التحكم فيه.

2 Lack of necessity: عدم الضرورة:

He, She, It, اسم مفرد → doesn't have to + **inf.** المصدر
I, You, We, They, اسم جمع → don't have to + **inf.** المصدر

Use **"don't have to/doesn't have to" when something is not essential to do.**

- تستخدم (don't have to/doesn't have to) (ليس من الضروري) عندما لا يكون هناك شيء ضروري للقيام به. أي أنه لك الحرية بعدم فعل شيء لعدم وجود إلزام أو لك اختيار آخر.

- It's a holiday tomorrow. My father doesn't have to **get** up early.
- You don't have to **take** a bus. You can come with me in my car.

3 Prohibition: النهي/التحريم/المنع:

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't + **inf.** المصدر

Use **"mustn't" to talk about things that are necessary to avoid.**

- تستخدم (mustn't) (يجب ألا) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي يلزم تجنبها. أي عند المنع أو التحريم لفعل شيء ما لأن به ضررًا شديدًا أو أنه ضد القانون.

- People mustn't **smoke** in hospitals.
- You mustn't **go** when the traffic light is red.

We can use mustn't with;

it is forbidden ممنوع / banned مُحرم / not allowed غير مسموح / against the law ضد القانون

- وتتكون في السؤال:

Q. word + mustn't + subject (الفاعل) + inf. المصدر ...?

A: What mustn't we do now?

B: You mustn't cross now.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (don't have to) feed the animals. It's forbidden.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (mustn't) لوجود forbidden الدالة على المنع.

2. You ..... (not/have) belong to only one group of friends.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't have to) لأن الجملة تعبر عن شيء ليس من الضروري فعله ولوجود الفاعل you.

4 Advice: النصيحة:

Subject (الفاعل) + should + **inf.** المصدر (ينبغى أن)
Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + **inf.** المصدر (ينبغى ألا)

Use "should/shouldn't" for advice or to talk about things that are or are not a good idea to do.

- تستخدم (shouldn't/should) (ينبغى أن/ينبغى ألا) للنصيحة أو للتحدث عن الأشياء التى فعلها يعتبر فكرة جيدة أو ليس فكرة جيدة. ويمكن أن تُستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح.

- You should **keep** your secrets to yourself.
- People shouldn't **tell** others this sort of information.
- We should **visit** our grandparents at the weekend.

وتتكون فى السؤال:

Q. word + should/shouldn't + subject (الفاعل) + **inf.** المصدر ...?

A: What shouldn't you **do**?
B: We **shouldn't** go to bed late.
A: Where should we **go**?
B: You **should** go to the market now.

5 Possibility: الاحتمال:

Subject (الفاعل) + might + **inf.** المصدر

Use "might" to say that something is possible.

- تستخدم (might) (قد/ربما) لنقول إن شيئًا ما ممكن حدوثه أو ممكن عدم حدوثه.

- They might **be** more understanding than you think.

Got it?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You should ..... (talking) to your parents and tell them how you feel.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (talk) لأن should يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (must) talk to each other while the teacher is explaining the lesson.
2. She has a big problem. We ..... (mustn't) help her.
3. Tomorrow is a holiday. My children ..... (doesn't have to) get up early.

Answers 1 mustn't 2 must 3 don't have to

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We ..... touch objects in the museum; it is forbidden.
a) should not b) must not c) need not d) cannot

2 There's not much time left. I ..... prepare for the tour.
a) have to b) might c) can d) could

3 My father ..... go to work at 6 am tomorrow, for a meeting. WB
a) might b) had to c) should d) has to

4 You ..... say unkind things to people on social media. WB
a) don't have to b) shouldn't c) might not d) must

5 You ..... travel on that slow train; it is not advisable to take it.
a) should not b) might not c) could not d) need not

6 You ..... bring more food. We have enough already.
a) should b) must c) could d) don't have to

7 We are the organisers. We ..... welcome the guests.
a) mustn't b) might c) should d) would

8 Does Sama ..... to come early?
a) has b) have c) should d) must

9 You ..... know the password before you can use that computer. WB
a) might b) should c) must d) has to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 She ..... (not/have) hurry. She is not late for school.
2 You ..... (must) do that. It's against the law.
3 He ..... (shouldn't) wash his hands before he eats.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 It's not necessary to get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday. (don't have)
.....

2 It's important to turn off the lights before going to bed. (must)
.....

3 It is not advisable to drink too much coffee. (should)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I ..... wake up early to catch the flight tomorrow.
a) must b) can c) could d) have

2 We ..... either make lunch or dinner.
a) might b) ought c) has to d) had

3 Tarek is worried because he ..... do badly in his exams. WB
a) must b) has to c) might d) should

4 ..... we inform them about our arrival?
a) May b) Could c) Should d) Would

5 Ragab has an accident. He ..... come to the meeting.
a) doesn't have b) ought not c) might d) might not

6 Drivers ..... use their mobiles while driving.
a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't

7 I'll tell you a secret, but you ..... tell anyone! WB
a) don't have to b) should c) mustn't d) might

8 You ..... always report your parents of your exam results.
a) should b) would c) could d) mustn't

9 You ..... keep away from fire or you will harm yourself.
a) mustn't b) must c) should d) shouldn't

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 He must park here. It's forbidden. (.....)
2 Does Ola has to clean the house? (.....)
3 I have to get up early. It's Friday. (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 It is not allowed for competitors at the Olympics to hurt each other. (mustn't)
.....

2 It's against the law to drive a car without a licence. (mustn't)
.....

3 It's possible that he is at home. (might)
.....

(C) Skills

1. Speaking

Discussing teenage worries and suggesting solutions to problems

مناقشة أمور مقلقة للمراهقين واقتراح حلول

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

I'm embarrassed about being so tall. أنا محرج من كونى طويلًا جدًا.

You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a positive thing! يجب ألا تشعر بالسوء تجاه طولك. إنه شىء إيجابى.

For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious about them. بالنسبة لى، الامتحانات هى مشكلتى، أشعر بالقلق الشديد تجاهها.

I guess we're all good at different subjects, and not so good at others. أعتقد أننا جميعًا جيدون فى مواد مختلفة، ولسنا جيدين فى مواد أخرى.

Cyberbullying is a problem, too. التنمر الإلكترونى مشكلة أيضًا.

You should tell a teacher or a parent. يجب أن تخبر معلمًا أو ولى أمر.

Type a message



Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma tells Mona about her problem.

Salma : Good morning, Mona.

Mona : (1)..... . You look sad. (2).....?

Salma : Because someone sent me unkind text messages on the internet.

Mona : Oh dear! (3).....?

Salma : Yes. I told my teacher.

Mona : (4).....?

Salma : He knew the student who did this and asked her to stop bullying.

Mona : Great! Did your parents know about that?

Salma : (5)..... .

Mona : Why didn't you tell them?

Salma : Because I don't want them to be worried about me.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend tells you that he's/she's embarrassed about being so thin.

.....

2 You tell your friend about your problem with exams.

.....

3 Your friend tells you that he/she got cyberbullied!

.....

4 You tell your friend that you feel bad about your weight.

.....



2. Write it right

How to write an email about giving advice on exams

كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى عن إعطاء نصيحة من أجل الاختبارات

- You should eat healthy food like ..... .
- You shouldn't eat ..... .
- Find a comfortable place ..... .
- Revise well for ..... .
- Make notes of main points ..... .
- Take regular breaks.
- Be positive!

Writing tips

If you aim to the quality that makes your writing understandable. Make your sentences connected with each other.

- إذا كنت تهدف إلى الجودة التى تجعل كتابتك مفهومة، لجعل الجمل التى تكتبها مرتبطة ببعضها البعض.

To : nessma@gmail.com
From : alyaa@yahoo.com
About : Advice for exams

Dear Nessma,

Greetings! I hope you are in good health. I know you're having exams soon, so I'm going to give you some advice to help you prepare for your exams. While studying, you should eat food that gives you energy. You shouldn't eat sweets or drink cola. Sugar won't help you study, but fruit and cereals will. Apples are such a good choice. Find a comfortable place where you study, but not 'too' comfortable or you'll fall asleep! It is easier to study when you are positive and relaxed. Now, if you start feeling anxious, have a little break. Go out for awhile and get some fresh air. Make notes of the main points and read them. Use past exam papers to practise. They will help you understand what important points that are tested. Take regular breaks while you're studying. A five-minute break every half an hour is usually enough. Drink plenty of water too. I'm sure you're going to do great.

Yours, Alyaa

Check Point: Write an email of 110 words to your friend Eman to give her some advice on her English exam. Your name is Shams. Your email address is shams@student.com. Your friend's email address is eman@yahoo.com.

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hazem gives some advice to Dalia who has a test.

Hazem : How are you, Dalia?

Dalia : (1)..... .

Hazem : You look anxious! (2).....?

Dalia : Because I have an English speaking test next week.

Hazem : Don't worry. You can pass it easily.

Dalia : (3).....?

Hazem : You should revise well and try speaking much English with a friend.

Dalia : (4)..... . What else should I do?

Hazem : (5)..... .

Dalia : You are right, finding a comfortable place to study in is good advice.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend feels embarrassed for being tall.

.....

2. A friend of yours tells secrets to his/her friends.

.....

3. You see someone smoking at the hospital.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He has to go to work early ..... a meeting.
   a) of b) to c) at d) for
2. You shouldn't ..... your secret to anyone.
   a) make b) keep c) tell d) say
3. You need a ..... to log on to the system.
   a) crossword b) password c) keyword d) backward
4. We both like the same ..... of music.
   a) group b) band c) concert d) sort
5. Every child will ..... a small present at the party.
   a) deliver b) receive c) produce d) introduce

6 Thank you for your ..... to help us.
a) offer b) advice c) over d) tour

7 To be a doctor, you should be very good at ..... subjects.
a) studies b) maths c) arts d) science

8 He seems to be a liar. We ..... believe him.
a) should b) shouldn't c) might not d) have to

9 We're late. We ..... leave now.
a) might b) ought c) must d) could

10 You ..... not speak in the library.
a) must b) don't have to c) have to d) mustn't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We have lots of time before the concert starts. We ..... (not/have) take a taxi.
2 It is the last train to Tanta today. Hurry up. We ..... (must) miss it.
3 You ..... (not/should) say unkind things to people on social media. WB

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 It is necessary to get a passport to travel abroad. (must)

.....

2 She isn't late; it isn't necessary for her to hurry. (have to)

.....

3 Must I wear this tie? (Do)

.....

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Social media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB Pages 58 - 60
WB Pages 111 & 112

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

although (conj)	بالرغم من
blog (n)	مدونة
certain (adj)	معين/محدد/متأكد
comment (ed) (n/v)	تعليق/يعلق
cyberbully (y-ied) (v)	يتنمر عبر الإنترنت
experience (n)	تجربة فى الحياة
include (d) (v)	يتضمن/يشمل
joke (d) (v/n)	يمزح/نكتة
life jacket (n)	سترة النجاة
locked (adj)	مقفل
luckily (adv)	لحسن الحظ
message (n)	رسالة
popular (adj)	محبوب/شائع/شعبى
reader (n)	القارئ
realise (d) (v)	يدرك
review (n)	مقالة نقدية/نقد
suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
waterfall (n)	شلال

Lesson 4

afterwards (adv)	بعد ذلك
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس
breathing (n)	عملية التنفس
culture (n)	ثقافة
daily/everyday	يومى
deeply (adv)	بعمق
definition (n)	تعريف
happiness (n)	السعادة
improve (d) (v)	يحسن
mention (ed) (v)	يذكر/يشير
mind (n)	عقل
mindfulness (n)	تركيز كامل للذهن
practise (d) (v)	يتدرب على/يمارس
recently (adv)	حديثًا
simple (adj)	بسيط
timetable (n)	جدول الحصص

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

amazing (adj)	مذهل	funny (adj)	مضحك
baker's (n)	المخبز	group (n)	مجموعة
building (n)	مبنى	hope (d) (v)	يأمل
careful (adj)	حريص	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	next door	مجاور
dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان	one day	ذات يوم
engine (n)	محرك/موتور	result (n)	نتيجة

Lesson 4

facts (n)	حقائق	present (n)	الحاضر
feelings (n)	مشاعر	spring (n)	الربيع
future (n)	المستقبل	smell (n/v)	رائحة/يشم
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	taste (n/v)	مذاق/يتذوق
past (n)	الماضى	thoughts (n)	أفكار

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

be ▶ friends with	يكون صداقات مع	start + آله	يشغل
do ▶ a test	يؤدى اختبارًا	stay ▶ up late	يسهر حتى وقت متأخر
say ▶ sorry to	يقول آسف لـ	write ▶ a comment	يكتب تعليقًا

Lesson 4

calmly thinking	التفكير بهدوء	feel ▶ better	يشعر بتحسن
do ▶ better at	يعمل بشكل أفضل فى	go ▶ to sleep	يذهب للنوم

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

for help	للمساعدة	revise for	يراجع لـ
go into	يدخل	share with	يشارك مع
in a language	بلغة	sorry about	آسف عن
kind to	عطوف مع	take + someone + out	يأخذ شخصًا للنزهة
on a helicopter	فى هليكوبتر	ticket to	تذكرة لـ

Lesson 4

at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	stop from	يمنع من
count to	يعد حتى	think about/of	يفكر فى
for example	على سبيل المثال	turn into	يحول إلى
reason for	سبب لـ	worried about	قلق على

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

careful	حريص	careless	مهمل	funny	مضحك	unfunny	غير مضحك
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح	online	عبر الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت

Lesson 4

breathe in	يستنشق	breathe out	يُخرج زفيرًا	take air in	يُدخل الهواء	take air out	يُخرج الهواء

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 3

Present		Past simple	Past participle
hurt	يؤذى/يصيب/يؤلم	hurt	hurt
lose	يضيع/يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 4

mindfulness (n)	تركيز كامل للذهن	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I share my clothes ..... my twin brother.

a) with **b)** to c) at d) in

2 We should think calmly to ..... better at the problems we face.

a) take **b)** make c) do d) have

3 This is a good dictionary. It shows the ..... of new words in two languages.

a) feeling **b)** definition c) experience d) spilling

Answers 1 a) 2 c) 3 b)

Language Notes

1 **suggest + v + ing/suggest + فاعل + inf. المصدر** يقترح

- I suggested **going** to the zoo.
- They suggested that **we cyberbully** a boy in my class.

2 **is called يُسمى / called الذى يُسمى**

- My uncle is called Sayed.
- We cyberbully a boy in my class called Fawzi.

3 **the only one + to + inf. المصدر** الشخص الوحيد

- He was the only one to **write** an unkind comment.

4 **hope + to + inf. المصدر / hope + فاعل + will + inf.** يأمل ان

- I hope **to find** a new job.
- I hope my experience **will have** a positive result, too.

5 **"be" + able to + inf.** قادر على

A) Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf. قادر على (فى المضارع)

- I'm able to **do** my English homework alone.
- Nada is able to **cook** pizza.
- They are able to **win** the game.

B) Subject + was/were + able to + inf. كان قادرًا على (فى الماضى)

- I was able to **save** a little girl from the fire.
- We were able to solve the problem.

C) Subject + will be able to + inf. سوف يكون قادرًا على (فى المستقبل)

- Next year, I will be able to **drive** a car.

---

6 **everyday** يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)

- Children should tell their parents about their everyday **activities.**

every day كل يوم (ظرف زمان)

- I do exercise every day.

---

7 **close** يغلق (بدون مفتاح أو قفل)

lock يغلق (بمفتاح أو قفل ولا يمكن فتحه إلا بالمفتاح)

- Don't forget to lock the door when you leave. Not just close it behind you.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father suggests my brother ..... in the USA.
   a) studying b) to studying
   c) study d) to study
2. We can't live without mobiles. We use them in our ..... life.
   a) yearly b) every year
   c) every day d) everyday
3. I hope I ..... high marks in my next exams.
   a) would get b) won't get
   c) don't get d) will get

Answers (1 c) (2 d) (3 d)

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever followed your friends without thinking? If yes, tell us what happened.

1. Read the blog quickly and answer the questions.

SB page 58



I always wanted to be part of a certain group of popular[1] students. One day, they suggested that we cyberbully[2] a boy in my class called Eyad, so I wrote an unkind comment about him on social media.

I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise[3] that they were joking[4], and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Eyad read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include[5] me in their group. I am so embarrassed about what I did.

However, I hope my experience will have a positive result[6], too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should think before you do something. Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully[7] and always be kind to people.

Hussein

(1) شعبي، مشهور
(2) يتنمر على الإنترنت
(3) يدرك
(4) يضحك، يهزج
(5) يتضمن، يضم
(6) نتيجة إيجابية
(7) بعناية

Post-reading questions:

1. What was Hussain able to do the next day?
2. How did Eyad feel when he read the unkind comment?

Life Skills

It is important to apologise when you do something wrong. It shows that you are brave enough to face your mistakes.

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Do you enjoy the sea? Why?

3. Complete the story with these words. You can use them more than once.

WB Page 111



Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I **had to** wear a special life jacket (1) and he said I **could** walk carefully around the boat, but I **couldn't** run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I **couldn't** see the beach, only the sea.

Then the engine (2) stopped! We tried to start it, but we **couldn't**.

I **could** swim well, but I knew that I **couldn't** swim to the beach (3). So my uncle **was able to** telephone for help! They said they **could** send a helicopter to help us.

However, suddenly (4) the engine started again! So we **didn't have to** go home on a helicopter.

(1) سترة النجاة
(2) موتور/محرك
(3) شاطئ
(4) فجأة

Post-reading question:
- Why did the writer's uncle phone for help?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- How do you think we can stay positive during rough times?

2. Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1. SB page 60

THE DAILY NEWS



As part of a plan to improve[1] students' mental health[2], more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced mindfulness[3] as a part of the timetable. In a mindfulness class, students learn to breathe[4] slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy. We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do to in the future. However, trying to think only about the present helps us to relax[5], and to really think deeply about everything we are doing at the moment.

This helps to stop us from feeling anxious[6] or worried about things we have done or have to do. Students say that mindfulness helps them to feel better about themselves, and afterwards, they do better at their school work, too.

(1) يطور/يحسن
(2) الصحة النفسية
(3) تركيز كامل للذهن
(4) يتنفس
(5) يسترخ
(6) قلق

Post-reading question:

Complete the following sentences:

1. In a mindfulness class, students learn to ..... .
2. Students say that mindfulness helps them to ..... .

Lesson 4

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- What do you do when you feel bad about something?

3. *Listen to some students talking about mindfulness. Put the following things they mention in the correct order.* SB Page 60



Boy 1 : In mindfulness[1] classes, we learn that it's OK to have negative[2] thoughts, like when we feel angry. We don't have to feel bad about that. It helps me to understand my feelings. And try to turn them into something positive. Mindfulness is about being kind to yourself, and kind to other people too.

Girl 1 : In the class, you have to close your eyes, breathe[3] in, count to 5, then breathe out slowly. Breathing like this makes you feel calm[4].

Boy 2 : In the class, we try not to think about all our problems, we should only think about the things that are around us. Think about the present[5] only, what's happening right now. The reason[6] for this is – we can't change the future[7] or the past[8], we can only do something about the present.

Girl 2 : In mindfulness, you have to learn to find happiness[9] in simple[10] things. For example, when you eat a favourite food, think about how it smells, tastes and looks – this is a new way of doing everyday things.

(1) تركيز كامل للذهن
(2) سلبي
(3) يتنفس
(4) هادئ
(5) الحاضر
(6) سبب
(7) المستقبل
(8) الماضي
(9) السعادة
(10) بسيط

Post-listening question: - Why should we think only about the present?

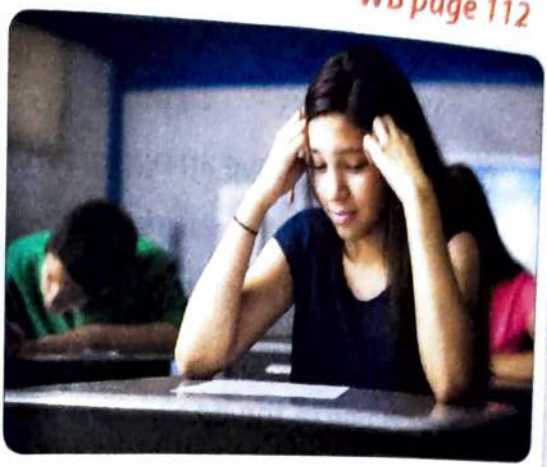
Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What do you do when you feel angry or anxious?

2. Complete the sentences with these words. WB page 112





Ashraf : I understand my **feelings** better now. For example, when I feel **angry**, I play a sport. I usually find I play better!

Lamar : It's a nice, sunny day in spring. My friends want me to play a game with them, but I'm feeling **anxious**. We had a test last week and I did **badly**. We have another test next week and I don't think it will be easier.

Mariam : It's morning. I can hear the wind in the trees and the birds **singing**. I am **breathing** slowly and carefully.

Post-reading question:

Are these sentences true or false?

1. When Ashraf is angry, he plays music. ( )
2. Lamar feels anxious because she did badly at the exam. ( )
3. Mariam is breathing slowly and carelessly. ( )



تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال فى أى مادة ؟

الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة اسأل الأضواء

و سيتم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجانا من خلال

App Store

www.aladwaa.com

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 ..... means being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment. WB
a) Mindfulness b) Mind c) Thoughtfulness d) Illness

2 Everyone will have an opportunity to ..... on my post.
a) comment b) support c) suggest d) include

3 My grandmother always ..... and makes us laugh when we visit her. WB
a) jokes b) cries c) shouts d) provides

4 The review of the book has nothing ..... to say about it. It sounds great! WB
a) cyberbully b) includes c) jokes d) negative

5 We know our lessons from the ..... .
a) timeout b) timetable c) timeline d) timer

6 It's important to take care of your body and ..... health.
a) public b) local c) special d) mental

7 My friend has often ..... you to me.
a) mentioned b) said c) told d) reported

8 Our neighbour who lives next ..... is very kind.
a) house b) door c) home d) wall

9 I need to see my ..... because my teeth were hurting.
a) chemist b) surgeon c) hospital d) dentist

10 I have to revise ..... my maths test next week.
a) of b) to c) for d) at

11 You'll ..... better after a good night's sleep.
a) fill b) fail c) fall d) feel

12 Why should I ..... sorry if it's not my mistake?
a) say b) tell c) inform d) mention

13 My friends' unkind comments hurt my ..... .
a) expressions b) feelings c) face d) experience

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He did a survey about the negative things of the internet and why some people ..... .
a) cyber net b) cyberbully c) cyberspace d) cyber game

2 Does the price ..... the delivery?
a) offer b) contain c) consist d) include

3 Everyone wears a ..... jacket while kayaking.
a) life b) live c) lives d) float

4 ....., I didn't hurt myself when I fell.
a) Likely b) Unluckily c) Luckily d) Lucky

5 I'm meeting a ..... of friends for dinner tonight. I will see lots of my friends.
a) few b) group c) band d) team

6 I listened ..... to her story, so I understood it well.
a) badly b) boringly c) carefully d) carelessly

7 I went to the ..... to buy fresh bread.
a) baker's b) dentist's c) grocer's d) butcher's

8 My father always takes me ..... in his car at the weekend.
a) off b) out c) on d) under

9 You look tired. Did you ..... up late last night?
a) wake b) get c) spend d) stay

10 Suddenly, my car ..... stopped and didn't start again.
a) tool b) engine c) machine d) equipment

11 Practise ..... in your daily life and have free mind of worries.
a) mindfulness b) mind blowing c) mindset d) minders

12 Heavy rains made it impossible to ..... playing, so we stopped.
a) start b) continue c) include d) offer

13 He wrote a story in ..... English.
a) simple b) ugly c) hard d) silly

(B) Language

Modal Verbs الأفعال الناقصة (الماضى)

1 Necessity in the past: الضرورة فى الماضى:

Subject (الفاعل) + had to + **inf.** المصدر

Use "had to" to talk about things that were necessary or essential to do in the past.

- تستخدم (had to) (كان يجب أن) للحديث عن الأشياء التى كانت ضرورية أو أساسية للقيام بها فى الماضى.

- I had to **tell** my parents to help me with my problem.
- I had to **buy** bread before I went home after work.

وتتكون فى السؤال كالتالى:

Yes/No questions:

Did + subject (الفاعل) + have to + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- **A:** Did you have to **get** up early yesterday? **B:** Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Wh- questions:

Q. word + did + subject (الفاعل) + have to + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- Where did you have to **go** yesterday?

2 Lack of necessity in the past: عدم الضرورة فى الماضى:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't have to + **inf.** المصدر

Use "didn't have to" to talk about things that were not necessary or essential to do in the past.

- تستخدم (didn't have to) (لم يكن مضطرًا أن) للحديث عن أشياء لم تكن ضرورية أو أساسية للقيام بها فى الماضى.

- I didn't have to **do** what my friends suggested.
- She didn't have to **buy** bread yesterday. She had much bread already.

Wh- questions:

وتتكون فى السؤال كالتالى:

Q. word + did + الفاعل + not have to + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- What didn't he have to **do** last weekend?

3 Ability in the past: القدرة فى الماضى:

Subject (الفاعل) + could + **inf.** المصدر (استطاع أن)

Subject (الفاعل) + was/were able to + **inf.** المصدر (كان قادرًا أن)

Use "could/was, were able to" to talk about past abilities.

- تستخدم (could/was, were able to) (استطاع أن/كان قادرًا أن) للحديث عن قدرات الماضى.

- I could **swim** when I was six.
- I was able to **say** sorry to Fawzi.

Yes/No questions: وتتكون فى السؤال كالتالى:

Could + subject (الفاعل) + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- **A:** Could you **swim** when you were six? **B:** Yes, I could./No, I couldn't.

Was/Were + subject (الفاعل) + able to + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- **A:** Was Ali able to **read** when he was five? **B:** Yes, he was./No, he wasn't.

Wh- questions:

Q. word + could + subject (الفاعل) + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- What could you **do** when you were five?

Q. word + was/were + subject (الفاعل) + able to + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- What were you able to **see** at the concert?

4 Inability in the past: عدم القدرة فى الماضى:

Subject (الفاعل) + couldn't + **inf.** المصدر (لم يستطع أن)

Subject (الفاعل) + wasn't/weren't able to + **inf.** المصدر (لم يكن قادرًا أن)

Use "couldn't/wasn't, weren't able to" to talk about past inabilities.

- تستخدم (couldn't/wasn't, weren't able to) (لم يستطع أن/لم يكن قادرًا أن) للحديث عن عدم القدرة فى الماضى.

- They couldn't **understand** why I did it.
- They weren't able to **solve** the difficult problem.

وتتكون فى السؤال كالتالى:

Wh- questions:

Q. word + couldn't + subject (الفاعل) + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- What couldn't you **do** when you were young?

Q. word + wasn't/weren't + subject (الفاعل) + able to + **inf.** المصدر ...?

- What wasn't he able to **do** in the past?

لاحظ أن:

- تستخدم (was/wasn't, were/weren't + able to) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء فى الماضى ولكن فى موقف معين.
- تستخدم (could/couldn't) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء فى الماضى ولكن بشكل عام.

- I was the only one who was able to **do** the difficult sum.
- When I was young, I could **play** chess.

Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I was young, I..... (can't) play the guitar.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (couldn't) لأنها تعبر عن عدم القدرة فى الماضى.

2. I ..... (have) to go to hospital last week.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (had) لأنها إلزام فى الماضى.

3. It was really noisy, so I ..... (couldn't) to sleep last night.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't able) لوجود كلمة to قبل المصدر والفاعل I.

Check Point

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. At the age of three, I ..... (could) run, but I could walk.
2. ..... (Are) you able to write when you were five?
3. Samar wasn't at home, but I was able to ..... (contacted) her at her office.

Answers

1 couldn't 2 Were 3 contact

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There was a fire at the hotel, but firefighters ..... to put it out very quickly.
a) was able b) were able c) could d) can

2 ..... play chess when you were six?
a) Could you b) You could c) Were you d) You were

3 Fatma ..... to walk to school because she hurt her leg.
a) was not able b) didn't have to c) could not d) might not WB

4 Last week, I ..... to visit my uncle in hospital.
a) have b) had c) will have d) has

5 Arwa ..... have to stay up late yesterday. She had finished her homework early.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) won't

6 Why ..... you have to do P.E. when you were at school?
a) do b) does c) did d) were

7 It was very windy, so planes ..... to leave the airport. WB
a) was not able b) had not c) were not able d) could not

8 I searched for my watch for two hours. Luckily, I ..... to find it in the end.
a) could b) couldn't c) wasn't able d) was able

9 My brother Bido ..... read until he was 9.
a) could b) couldn't c) was able to d) wasn't able

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I ..... (not/able) to find a birthday present for my mum this year.
2 The teacher felt sick. That's why she ..... (have to) leave the lesson earlier.
3 My grandmother ..... (could) use a computer until last month.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I couldn't speak English at the age of four. (wasn't able)
.....

2 I was able to solve the problem. (could)
.....

3 It was not necessary to buy the flowers. Mum had bought them. (didn't have to)
.....

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Eight years ago, I ..... play the piano.
a) can b) could c) was able d) will be able to

2 In the mountains, we ..... see an amazing waterfall. WB
a) ought b) had c) could d) were able

3 We .....walk to the museum because there was a bus. WB
a) weren't able to b) didn't have to
c) had to d) wasn't able to

4 Yesterday, I didn't have money, so I ..... go to the bank.
a) didn't have to b) must c) have to d) had to

5 There was no water. So, he ..... have a bath in the morning.
a) couldn't to b) could c) wasn't able to d) was able

6 She was seriously ill, so I ..... call for the doctor last night.
a) have to b) was able to c) could d) had to

7 In 1945, people ..... play video games.
a) couldn't b) can't c) didn't have to d) wasn't able to

8 The baker's was closed, but we ..... buy some bread from the shop next door. WB
a) were able to b) couldn't c) wasn't able d) was able

9 He ..... read English well at the age of eight.
a) can b) could c) is able d) were able

2 Find the mistake and correct it:

1 Last Sunday, we can't take any photos in the museum. (.....)

2 Hazem was really tired this morning. He has to stay up late last night to revise for a maths test. (.....)

3 You could swim when you were 10? (.....)

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I wasn't able to ride a bike at the age of four. (couldn't)
.....

2 It was necessary for him to visit his ill uncle. (had to)
.....

3 Mona had the ability to come yesterday. (able to)
.....



(C) Skills



Write it right

How to write about ways to relax

كيفية الكتابة عن طرق الاسترخاء

- Why do people need to relax?
- How can we relax?
- What do you do to calm down?
- In which situations do you need to calm down?
- Suggest new ways for people to relax.

Writing tips

Spelling and grammatical errors can make it difficult for the reader to understand. Try to swap your writing with a friend and get his feedback.

الأخطاء النحوية والإملائية يمكن أن تصعب على القارئ فهم الفقرة. حاول أن تبادل فقرتك مع صديق للحصول على تعليقاته عنها.

Example

"Ways to relax"

There are lots of ways to relax. Some ways are designed to relax your mind and some to relax your body. Because the mind and body are connected, many relaxation ways work on both the mind and the body. Breathing exercises are one way to relax. Take a deep breath, hold it for a moment, and then let it out. Relaxing can quiet your mind and make you feel peaceful and calm. You can practise mindfulness. You should think about the things that are happening right now in the present moment. For example, listen to your body. Is your breathing fast, slow or deep? The idea is just to realise what is happening without trying to change it. There are many ways to relax, you can sit in a warm bath and listen to soft music. Some people feel more relaxed after they write about their feelings. Try to relax whenever possible and enjoy your special time.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of 110 words on "How to relax":

How to relax

Lessons 3&4 General Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You must tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to ..... you while using the internet. WB

a) push b) beat
c) comment d) cyberbully

2 Sometimes all doors may be closed for you, but remember, they aren't ..... .

a) locked b) looked c) clocked d) leaked

3 When did you ..... that you lost your passport?

a) understand b) realise
c) include d) look

4 Money could not buy ..... .

a) carefulness b) carelessness
c) illness d) happiness

5 Breathe ..... and relax, Don't think of anything else.

a) hard b) fast c) slowly d) friendly

6 What you feel, such as happy, upset, etc. are your ..... . WB

a) thoughts b) feelings
c) symbols d) expressions

7 I didn't understand anything. She spoke ..... a language I don't know at all.

a) in b) at c) by d) with

8 He ..... come to class yesterday because he was at the doctor's.

a) couldn't b) could c) can d) can't

9 The house was so old, so we had ..... rid of it.

a) getting b) get
c) to get d) to getting

10 I ..... to type 40 words a minute when I was a student.

a) could b) was able
c) am able d) can

2 Fill in the gaps:

Your friend (1)..... tell anyone your secret. Friends (2)..... keep secrets. However, you don't (3)..... to see this as a negative thing because she only wanted to help. You should think about your friend's mother's kind offer. She (4)..... help you with your problem. Who knows?

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The car didn't start at first, but I ..... (able/solve) the problem.
2. Julian could ..... (to play) the guitar when he was only ten.
3. I was able ..... (get) some really good goods.

4 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She could read when she was three. (able to)

.....

2. I played chess at the age of ten. (could)

.....

3. It was not necessary to hurry. You were not late. (have to)

.....

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"What you were or were not able to do when you were seven."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB Pages 61 - 63
WB Pages 113 - 115

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

clearly (adv)	بوضوح	listener (n)	مستمع
depressed (adj)	محبط	serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
example (n)	مثال	speaker (n)	متحدث
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	tablet (n)	التابلت/جهاز لوحى
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع	terrible (adj)	سيئ جدًا/فظيع

Lesson 6

brainstorm (n)	العصف الذهنى	support (ed) (v)	يدعم/يساند
digital (adj)	رقمى	teenage (adj/n)	سن المراهقة
display (ed) (v)	يعرض	tip (n)	تلميح/نصيحة
member (n)	فرد/عضو		

Words of sequence كلمات التسلسل

First of all	أولًا قبل كل شيء	Then (adv)	ثم
Secondly, (adv)	ثانيًا	Finally, (adv)	أخيرًا

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

listening skills	مهارات الاستماع	weather (n)	الطقس

Lesson 6

appearance (n)	مظهر	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
as (conj/prep)	كـ	parents (n)	الوالدان
diary (n)	مذكرات/يوميات	smile (d) (v)	يبتسم

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

as soon as possible	في أقرب وقت ممكن		have ▸	a test	لديه اختبار
fail ▸	my exams	أرسب في امتحاناتي	make ▸	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
				sure	يتأكد
give ▸	advice	يعطي نصيحة	seems ▸	different	يبدو مختلفًا
	an example of	يعطي مثال لـ	study ▸	medicine	يدرس الطب

Lesson 6

do ▸	well	يؤدي بشكل جيد	go ▸	well	يسير على ما يرام
feel ▸	better	يشعر بتحسن	let ▸	me know	دعني أعرف
get ▸	home	يصل إلى البيت	make ▸	a poster	يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا
	ready for	يستعد لـ	take ▸	a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

angry with	غاضب من	go on	يستمر
ask for	يطلب	meet up with	يجتمع مع/يلتقي مع
clear to	واضح لـ	unhappy about	غير سعيد بخصوص ...
cope with	يواكب/يتعامل مع	unkind to	غير عطوف مع
depressed about	محبط من	without	بدون

Lesson 6

a long way from	على مسافة طويلة من	near to	بالقرب من
agree on	يتفق على	on the poster	على الملصق
calm down	يهدئ	positive for	إيجابي لـ
help with	يساعد في	start by + v + ing	يبدأ بـ
leave for	يسافر إلى	say goodbye to	يقول مع السلامة لـ
look after	يعتني بـ	talk to somebody about something	يتحدث مع شخص عن شيء

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5			
break	يكسر/ينكسر	broke	broken
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
Lesson 6			
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
know	يعرف	knew	known
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My parents always give me good advice to avoid ..... mistakes.
   a) making b) taking c) giving d) playing
2. My uncle left ..... London 3 days ago.
   a) in b) with c) for d) at
3. Samar feels ..... because she took the right medicine.
   a) ill b) unwell c) sick d) better

Answers (١ a) (٢ c) (٣ d)



Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Who do you talk to when you have a problem?

2. Listen to four conversations and answer the questions. SB Page 61

Narrator: Conversation 1

Boy 1: My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really depressed(1) about it, I don't know what to do.

Boy 2: Oh, don't worry about them! They're boring anyway. You can find new friends.



Narrator: Conversation 2

Boy 3: What's wrong, Khaled?

Boy 4: I'm really worried about something.

Boy 3: Tell me about it. What happened?

Boy 4: I heard some bad news yesterday ...

Boy 3: Go on ... It might help to talk about it, you know.

(1) محبط
(2) نتائج
(3) الطب

Narrator: Conversation 3

Girl 1: I think I'm going to fail my exams.

Girl 2: Well, you aren't the only one. I'm doing badly too.

Girl 1: But I really want to get good results(2). I want to go to university and study medicine(3) ...

Girl 2: I don't want to go to university! I want to get a job as soon as possible and earn some money. Have I told you about my plan to travel to America...?

Narrator: Conversation 4

Girl 3: I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good for her.

Girl 4: I see. What makes you say that?

Girl 3: She just seems different. She's not the same person I used to know.

Girl 4: It's clear you're unhappy about it. Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Girl 3: She's not working hard at school anymore. When I speak to her about it, she just laughs and says I'm boring.

Girl 4: That must make you feel very sad.

Post-listening question: - What does Girl 2 want to be?

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- How was your day?

3. Listen and check your answers, then role-play the dialogue. WB Page 113



Mazin : I had a terrible day at school.

Mother : Tell me about it. What happened?

Mazin : It was my English class. You see …

Mother : Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.

Mazin : We had a test and I was last in the class!

Mother : That must make you feel very sad.

Mazin : It was so difficult.

Mother : Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Mazin : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.

Mother : It's clear you are unhappy about it. Why don't we talk to the teacher?

Post-listening question:

- Why was Mazin sad?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Do you help your little siblings with studying?

1. Read about Dalia's day. Which parts of the day are positive for her? Which are negative?

SB page 62





Dalia gets ready for school. She can hear her parents talking to her older brother. He is not doing well at school and they are worried about his exams. She is worried about her brother, too. Before leaving for school, she says goodbye to her brother. He does not look happy and this makes her feel even worse.

Dalia tries to stop her brother playing video games. She tells him that he should study, but he does not listen. Then she looks on social media for some advice, but she can't find anything useful. Instead, her friends just tell her about what they did that day.

The first lesson at school is science. Dalia works hard and does some good work.

The afternoon lessons don't go well. Dalia can't stop thinking about her brother. How can she encourage him to work harder?

Dalia goes home. Her brother is playing video games. Dalia's parents don't know what to do about him.

She wants to tell her friends about her worries, but she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings. So she tells them she had a good day.

Post-reading questions:

1. How do the other members of Dalia's family feel?
2. What made Dalia feel worse?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Have you got friends at school? How do you help each other?

1. Dalia's friend Riham has written an email to her friends with suggestions about how to help Dalia. Put her email in the correct order. WB page 114

Hi, friends,



(C) 1 I want to write about Dalia. I will start by saying we must do something. If we do nothing, Dalia will continue to feel lonely and upset[1]. This will not help her.

(A) 2 So, first of all, it would be a good idea to talk to Dalia. She must tell us her feelings[2]. Then we will know how best to support[3] her.

(D) 3 Secondly, why don't we talk to her teacher? I think it will be difficult to talk to her parents, but the teacher can tell them that Dalia is worried about[4] her brother. I think this might help.

(B) 4 Finally, I think we should tell her that we are proud[5] to have her as a friend. We should help her with her school work and also take her out so she can relax after school. This will make her feel better. Do you all agree? Email and let me know.

Best wishes,

Riham

(1) منزعج
(2) مشاعر
(3) يساند
(4) قلق على
(5) فخور

Post-reading question:
- Why should they talk to Dalia?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you live near your school?

3. Read about Taha. Why does he feel lonely and worried?

WB page 114



(1) قرية
(2) يعتني بـ

Taha's friends all live near to their school. When they have finished their homework, the friends all meet up to play in the park. Sometimes, they help each other with their school work, too.

Taha lives a long way from the school. It takes an hour for him to get home to his small village[1]. He does not have a father and he is worried because his mother is ill. So when he gets home, he has to look after[2] his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

Post-reading question: - Why is Taha worried?

Lesson 7

Reading Text

1. Complete the text messages with words from the box.

SB page 63

I'm worried about my friend. She is so unhappy about her **appearance**. How can I help her feel more **positive** about herself? People like her and she has won prizes for her art; the only **negative** thing about her is her opinion of herself. It's really bad for her **mental health**.

I'm sorry she feels this way. You say that she has won art prizes - you could try to tell her that this is a wonderful **achievement**.

I've just moved here and I'm the only person in my class who isn't from this country. I'm **embarrassed** to talk to people because I can't speak the language well. I haven't told anybody about this and I want it to be a **secret**. My parents know I feel a bit **upset** but they don't know why.

It can be **lonely** being the only person from another country, but don't worry about your language ability. Try to **breathe** in and out calmly, and then talk to people.

Nobody minds when people make mistakes!

Lesson 7

Reading Text

3. Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 115



Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months ago, **she had** to go to hospital after she broke her leg. She **was able to** go home the next day but she **wasn't able to** walk for many weeks. She **could** go to school, but of course she **couldn't** do any sports until her leg was better. Her mother told her that she **didn't have to** do any housework, either. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she **was able to** play tennis with me. That was good, but the best thing is that she is not worried about being ill any more, because she knows she will get better!

Project

Make a poster about teenage problems.

1. In groups, brainstorm things that make many teenagers unhappy or worried.
2. Make a digital 'word cloud' or draw the words on the poster.
3. Read about ways other students **cope** with their problems below. Which do you agree with?
4. Write your own tip for looking after your mental health and add it to the poster.
5. Display your posters in the classroom for everyone to read.



Exercise helps me to calm down when I'm angry.

I write my feelings in a diary.

Listening to music really helps me.

My advice would be to talk to someone you trust.

Vocabulary Exercises

ose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Young children are not good listeners because they often ..... !
a) think b) interrupt c) meet d) listen

2 It's ..... to me that Ahmed is very good at running. He is so fast!
a) hard b) easy c) clear d) clean

3 Luckily, the damage was not ..... .
a) seriously b) serious c) wonderful d) amazing

4 I ..... to them that three days in the city were very little time to see all the sights.
a) invited b) offered c) explained d) introduced

5 He hopes to ..... with his old friends at the weekend.
a) meet up b) make up c) look after d) take

6 She had all the usual ..... problems. She was 17 years.
a) baby b) small c) teenage d) teenager

7 He had expected her to be angry, but she was actually very ..... .
a) terrible b) understanding c) silly d) naughty

8 It is human nature to ..... mistakes.
a) spend b) take c) do d) make

9 My sister always ..... selfies among green trees.
a) does b) has c) makes d) takes

10 I'm unhappy ..... the work you did for me.
a) about b) at c) for d) around

11 Give me a call to ..... me know you've arrived safely.
a) allow b) let c) offer d) encourage

12 I agreed to her .....; it was really a good idea.
a) suggestion b) apology c) mistake d) encouragement

13 My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really ..... about that.
a) excited b) pleased c) glad d) depressed

14 We don't ..... that when we connect to the internet from another computer, someone may watch our every move.
a) recognise b) inform c) realise d) report

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to ..... their work.
a) steal b) encourage c) support d) display

2 There are eleven ..... in the team.
a) articles b) elements c) members d) parts

3 They hoped to win but unluckily they lost. They were sadly ..... .
a) disappointed b) embarrassed c) worried d) pleased

4 She is proud to be a good ..... . Everyone likes to talk with her.
a) reader b) listener c) writer d) sleeper

5 It must be difficult to ..... with three small children and a job.
a) support b) connect c) meet d) cope

6 My father is the only person who ..... me to achieve my goals.
a) disappoints b) provides c) depresses d) supports

7 Students should ..... down before exams to be able to think clearly.
a) calm b) fall c) cut d) pass

8 We need to come up with new ideas, so let's ..... first.
a) sleep b) brainstorm c) walk d) run

9 My parents ..... me to join a sports centre.
a) encouraged b) introduced c) provided d) protected

10 We will leave ..... France in a few days.
a) at b) in c) to d) for

11 After I posted on my blog, I ..... many good comments.
a) took b) made c) got d) did

12 Things didn't ..... well at first, but then everything was OK.
a) make b) go c) have d) get

13 I couldn't see their faces ..... in the dark.
a) calmly b) badly c) slowly d) clearly

(B) Skills

1. Speaking

1. Showing that you are listening
إبداء الاهتمام والاستماع (المشاكل صديق)

What's wrong? - ما الأمر؟/ ما المشكلة؟.

Tell me about your problem. What happened? - أخبرنى عن مشكلتك؟ ماذا حدث؟

Go on! It might help to talk about it, you know! - استمر، الحديث عن مشكلتك يمكنه المساعدة، كما تعرف.

I see. What makes you say that? - افهم، ما الذى يجعلك تقول ذلك؟

It's clear you are unhappy about it. - من الواضح أنك غير سعيد بخصوص ذلك.

Can you give me an example of what you mean? - هل يمكن أن توضح ما تقصده بمثال؟

That must make you feel very sad. - من المؤكد أن هذا يجعلك حزينًا جدًا.

2. Suggesting solutions to problems
اقتراح حلول للمشاكل

So, first of all, it would be a good idea to + inf. ... - حسنًا، أولًا وقبل أى شىء، إنها لفكرة جيدة أن ... .

Let's tell that you should/shouldn't + inf. ... - دعنا نقول إنه يجب/لا يجب عليك أن ... .

Finally, I think we should + inf. ... - فى النهاية، أعتقد أنه يجب أن ... .

Why don't we + inf. ...? - لما لا ...؟


تطبيق الأضواء
هل لديك سؤال فى أى مادة ؟
الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة اسأل الأضواء
و سيتم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص.
حمل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال
App Store


Speaking Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazin tells his mother about his terrible day.

Mazin : I had a terrible day at school.
Mother: (1)..... . What happened?
Mazin : It was my English class. You see ...
Mother: (2)..... ! It might help to talk about it, you know!
Mazin : We had a test and I was last in the class!
Mother: (3)..... you feel very sad.
Mazin : It was so difficult.
Mother: (4)..... give me an example of what you mean?
Mazin : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.
Mother: It's clear you are unhappy about it. (5).....
we talk to the teacher?

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend tells you that he/she has a problem.

.....

2. You see your friend worried. Encourage him/her to talk.

.....

3. Your brother tells you he won't pass his test. Ask him about the reason.

.....

4. Your friend is very sad. Guess that there is something you know that makes him/her sad.

.....

5. Your friend talks about something, but you don't understand. Ask him/her to give examples.

.....

6. Your friend doesn't want to talk about his/her problem.

.....

Time to Practise

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Kamal tries to find a solution for Fareed's problem.

Fareed: I've got a problem.

Kamal : Tell me about it. (1)..... ?

Fareed: I know that my parents are going to be very angry with me.

Kamal : Go on! (2)..... to talk about it, you know!

Fareed: They gave me a new phone, but I broke it! I break so many things!

Kamal : (3)..... me an example of what you mean?

Fareed: Yes, I broke my father's tablet last month! He was very understanding.

Kamal : (4)..... you are unhappy about it.

Fareed: I feel embarrassed.

Kamal : (5)..... tell your parents about the phone? I'm sure they will understand.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend broke his/her sister's glasses. Suggest that he/she tell her.

.....

2 You ask your friend to tell you about his/her problem.

.....

3 Ask your friend to give you an example of what he/she means.

.....

4 You know there is something that makes your friend unhappy.

.....

5 Your friend asks you to suggest an idea about his/her problem.

.....

6 Encourage your friend to talk about his/her problem.

.....

2. Write it right

How to write about teenage problems

كيفية الكتابة عن مشاكل المراهقين

- What kinds of problems do teens have?
- How does social media affect their life?
- Who can give them help?
- Suggest solutions for their problems.

Writing tips

Your topic sentence should be around the topic mentioned or you will be off point.

يجب أن تكون جملتك الرئيسية حول الموضوع المذكور والا ستكون بعيدة عن الهدف.

Example

"Teenage problems"

Teenagers around the world have a lot of problems, and today I'd like to talk about bullying and its effects. Many people have terrible memories from school, because of the bullying they have experienced. It's important to keep in mind that there are different kinds of bullying, and different solutions: Physical bullying is the most common form of bullying. Verbal bullying (التنمر اللفظى) is when someone insults and calls others names; he or she uses hurting language to upset others. Emotional bullying is even more serious than verbal bullying. It's to try to get someone else to feel lonely and depressed. Cyberbullying is becoming a very serious problem for teens. This type of bullying uses messaging, mobile phone text messages and online social networks. We need to keep teens aware of such bullies and teach them how to ask for help.

Check Point: Write a paragraph of 110 words on "Teenage worries":

Teenage worries

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nagwa talks to Naglaa about her problem.

Nagwa: I have a problem that makes me very worried.

Naglaa: (1)..... . What happened?

Nagwa: It is using the social media. You see ...

Naglaa: Go on! (2)....., you know!

Nagwa: Our friend, Azza put a funny photo on her social media! I wrote a bad comment.

Naglaa: (3)..... feel very sad.

Nagwa: I feel embarrassed.

Naglaa: (4)..... unhappy about it. Why don't you talk to her?

Nagwa: I'm afraid (5)..... listen to me.

Naglaa: She likes you and she's a good listener.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Tell your friend to talk about his/her problem.

.....

2 You tell your sister to give you an example of the problems she has.

.....

3 Guess the problem that makes your friend sad.

.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I usually get up at 7 and ..... ready for school.

a) reach b) arrive c) go d) get

2 She is worried ..... her brother who is seriously ill.

a) for b) to c) at d) about

3 Do you prefer to talk to your friends ..... your problems?

a) to b) with c) for d) about

4 She always takes a selfie and puts it ..... social media.

a) on b) at c) of d) for

5 When I explain something, everyone looks ..... in what I am saying.
a) happy b) anxious c) worried d) interested

6 She is ..... because they don't realise how she is very sad.
a) brave b) happy
c) interested d) disappointed

7 Taha's friends all live near ..... their school.
a) for b) to c) about d) at

8 We ..... get up early on holidays.
a) have to b) had to
c) must d) don't have to

9 ..... you have to go to work yesterday?
a) Did b) Could c) Do d) Must

10 They ..... travel to Hurghada by plane. I'm not sure.
a) will b) might c) must d) have to

4 Fill in the gaps:

My father took me out in his car. I (1)..... to be quiet. We travelled a long way, and after two hours we arrived at the aquarium. I (2)..... have to touch the objects on the show. I (3)..... see many types of fish. After that we decided to go to the museum, but we weren't (4)..... to go there because it was late.

5 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to your friend Azza to make suggestions about her problem of giving personal information on social media websites. Your name is Sawsan and your email address is sawsan@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is azza@student.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 6 Review



(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

abilities	قدرات	include (d)	يتضمن/يشمل
achievements	إنجازات	interrupt (ed)	يقاطع
anxious	قلق/مهموم	introduce (d)	يقدم
avoid (ed)	يتجنب	joke (d)	يمزح/نكتة
behaviour	سلوك	life jacket	سترة النجاة
breathe (d)	يتنفس	locked	مقفل
breathing	عملية التنفس	lonely	وحيد/منعزل
certain	معين/محدد/متأكد	luckily	لحسن الحظ
clear (to)	واضح لـ	member	فرد/عضو
comment (ed)	تعليق/يعلق	mental health	الصحة العقلية
common	شائع/منتشر	mention (ed)	يذكر/يشير
cope (d) with	يواكب/يتعامل مع	mind	عقل
culture	ثقافة	mindfulness	تركيز كامل للذهن
cyberbully (y ied)	يتنمر عبر الإنترنت	realise (d)	يدرك
cyberbullying	التنمر الإلكترونى	report (ed)	يبلغ عن/تقرير
deeply	بعمق	review	مقالة نقدية/نقد
digital	رقمى	scared	خائف
disappoint (ed)	يُحبط/يُخيب أمل	secret	سر/سرى
display (ed)	يعرض	serious	خطير/جاد
embarrassed (about)	مُحرج	simple	بسيط
encourage (d)	يشجع	skills	مهارات
example	مثال	social life	الحياة الاجتماعية
experience	تجربة فى الحياة	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
explain (ed)	يشرح	spread (ed)	ينتشر/ينشر
get bullied	يتعرض للتنمر	suggest (ed)	يقترح
happiness	السعادة	support (ed)	يساند/يدعم
improve (d)	يحسن	teen	فى سن المراهقة

(B) Language

Modal Verbs الأفعال الناقصة

1 Necessity: الضرورة:

- Friends must **keep** secrets.
- I have to **be** good at science subjects.
- I had to **tell** my parents.

2 Lack of necessity: عدم الضرورة:

- You don't have to **see** this as a negative thing.
- I didn't have to **do** what my friends suggested.

3 Prohibition: النهى/التحريم/المنع:

- I mustn't **talk** to my friends in the class while a teacher is explaining a lesson.

4 Advice: النصيحة:

- You should **talk** to your parents when you have a problem.
- People shouldn't **tell** others this sort of information.

5 Possibility: الاحتمال:

- They might **be** more understanding than you think.

6 Ability in the past: القدرة فى الماضى:

- I could **swim** when I was six.
- I was able to **say** sorry to Fawzi.

(C) Skills

Speaking

1. Showing that you are listening

- Tell me about your problem. What happened? - I see. What makes you say that?
- It's clear you are unhappy about it.
- Can you give me an example of what you mean?

2. Suggesting solutions to problems

- So, first of all, it would be a good idea to + inf. ... .
- Let's tell that you should/shouldn't + inf.
- Finally, I think we should + inf. ... .
- Why don't we + inf. ...?

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 6 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Shehab : What mustn't you do when you are in a library?

Kayan : .....

B) You : .....

Mother : Tell me about it. What happened?

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. You should talk to your parents and	a) when I finish school.
2. Some of my friends did not want	b) breathe slowly.
3. In a mindfulness class, students learn to	c) slow breath.
4. Today, nearly four billion people use social	d) to include me in their group.
5. My parents want me to be a doctor	e) tell them how you feel.
	f) media in their daily lives.

Answers: 1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( ) 4. ( ) 5. ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about TEN (10) sentences on:

"Cyberbullying"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice 6

Based on Unit 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rania tells her father about her problem.

Rania : I have got a serious problem.

Father : (1).....?

Rania : It was my school library. You see ...

Father : Go on! (2)..... .

Rania : We went to the library after break. I made much noise.

Father : (3).....?

Rania : Yes, I played loud music on my MP3 player.

Father : (4)..... .

Rania : I feel embarrassed when the librarian looked at me.

Father : (5).....? He'll listen to you well.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend looks sad. Ask him/her why.

.....

2 Encourage your brother to talk about his problem.

.....

3 Suggest talking to the teacher about the problem.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mindfulness means keeping up moment-by-moment with our thoughts, feelings, body and the environment around us. Mindfulness also includes acceptance, meaning that we pay attention to our thoughts and feelings without judging them—without believing, for example, that there's a "right" or "wrong" way to think or feel in a given moment. When we practise mindfulness, our thoughts are what we're feeling in the present moment rather than in the past or the future.

You might make it a habit to spend a few minutes being mindful at certain times of the day, like during meals or when you're driving your car. Or, you might set up a time to practise it. You can also make it a habit to practise focus on your breathing when you're upset or anxious.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 Mention the main idea of the passage.

.....

2 What's mindfulness?

.....

3 When do you really need to practise mindfulness?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .

a) breathing b) car

c) habit d) mindfulness

5 We could make mindfulness a habit by setting up ..... times.

a) changeable b) certain

c) no d) full

6 When we practise mindfulness, we consider our ..... avoiding judgment.

a) right or wrong b) past and future

c) thoughts and feelings d) meals and driving

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is important to encourage good ..... for children.

a) situation b) behaviour c) delivery d) neighbour

WB

2 Shady makes us laugh. He is always .....!

a) crying b) joking c) shouting d) looking

3 They ..... the disappearance of the little boy.

a) spoke b) said c) advised d) reported

4 I have an office that I share ..... some other teachers.

a) by b) to c) at d) with

5 Let's have our picnic by the ..... . The view of the water falling is fantastic.

a) waterfall b) waterwheel c) mountain d) desert

6 Nagwa was ..... when she heard that her grandfather was in hospital.

a) upset b) embarrassed c) happy d) good

7 Someone sent me an unkind ..... message.
a) tax b) text c) textile d) passage

8 Before we had the internet, we ..... find all our information in books.
a) have to b) must c) had to d) were able

9 Tarek ..... go to the dentist's because his teeth hurt.
a) was able b) had c) was able to d) had to

10 My mother told me that I ..... walk until I was about three!
a) can't b) might not
c) wasn't able to d) didn't have to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Although I woke up 40 minutes late, I ..... (able/get) to work on time.

2 We ..... (could) get to the meeting on time yesterday because the train was late.

3 I ..... (have) make a phone call now.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 It's important to turn off the lights before going to bed. (must)

.....

2 He was able to ride his brother's bike at the age of five. (could)

.....

3 It was necessary for her to study for her exams. (She)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Ways to feel relaxed"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 6

Think and Create

Choose one of these topics to write about:

1. Mindfulness

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What do you know about mindfulness?
- Why should we try mindfulness? And how can it help us?
- What does mindfulness teach us to do with negative feelings?
- Why does mindfulness teach us not to think about the future or the past?
- What is your advice for the people who ignore the importance of mindfulness?



2. Teenage problems

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What are the things most teenagers worry about?
- Why do they worry about these things?
- What is the effect of social media on their lives?
- Do you think the social media is the reason for their worries and problems? If yes, how does it have an effect on them?
- What can they do to cope with their problems? and how can adults help them?
- What do you advise them to do?



Tips

1 ➤ A suitable title
2 ➤ An introduction
3 ➤ Main ideas and information
4 ➤ Resources

Review B Units 4, 5 & 6







Review B

SB Pages 64 & 65
WB Pages 116 & 117

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Can you name two Egyptians Paralympic swimmers?

1. *Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.* SB Page 64



Aya Ayman Abbas is a young Egyptian Paralympic swimmer with an incredible(1) list of achievements(2). She was born in Cairo and she joined a swimming club when she was six. She couldn't walk, but at the age of eight, she was already swimming in national competitions(3).

When she was 16, Aya became the first and youngest Egyptian swimmer to enter the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games(4).

Aya had to face many challenges(5) in her life. When she first started swimming, there weren't any swimming teams or equal opportunities(6) for disabled people(7). Aya was able to achieve her goals with the support of her parents. However, since that time, life has become a lot more positive for young disabled athletes.

Aya is now a member of the Egyptian Paralympic Team(8). Although she has a busy life as a university student, she is also a campaigner(9) for disabled sports people. She hasn't stopped training since her last event. She is a true role model(10) for all Egyptians!

(1) لايصدق
(2) إنجازات
(3) مسابقات قومية
(4) الألعاب البارلمبية
(5) تحديات
(6) فرص
(7) ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
(8) الفريق المصرى للألعاب البارلمبية
(9) ناشط
(10) نموذج

Post-reading questions:

1. Who is Aya Ayman Abbas?
2. What challenges did Aya face when she started swimming?

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Have you ever felt disappointed? Why?

3. Listen to two conversations. Which two problems do the speakers talk about?

SB Page 64

Narrator: Conversation 1



Ola : What's wrong, Lina? Has something bad happened? You look really unhappy.

Lina : It's nothing. I'm just a bit anxious, that's all.

Ola : Tell me about it. What are you anxious about?

Lina : Well, you know it's the national maths competition soon.

Ola : Yes. Go on.

Lina : I've revised for it since the beginning of the year, and my parents think I will do very well. But I'm worried that I'm going to do very badly and that my parents will be disappointed.

Ola : I see. Would it help to talk to the maths teacher? Perhaps she could help you revise some of the things you are less positive about.

Lina : Yes, I could do that. That's a good idea, Ola, thanks.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Hany : Hi, Tamer! I haven't seen you for a long time. Are you OK?

Tamer : Well ...

Hany : I can see there's a problem. Why don't you tell me about it?

Tamer : I'm too embarrassed to talk about it, Hany. I'm afraid I've done something wrong.

Hany : Go on ... maybe it will help to talk to someone else about it.

Tamer : One of my school friends told me a secret, and I told someone else. That was wrong. He's really angry with me now, and I can understand why.

Hany : I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very sad for you both. Is there anything you can do?

Tamer : I've tried to say I'm sorry, but he doesn't want to talk to me. He hasn't spoken to me since it happened.

Hany : You could try sending him an email? It's often easier to write about how you feel than to talk about it.

Tamer : Yes, you might be right ... thanks Hany. I think I'll try that.

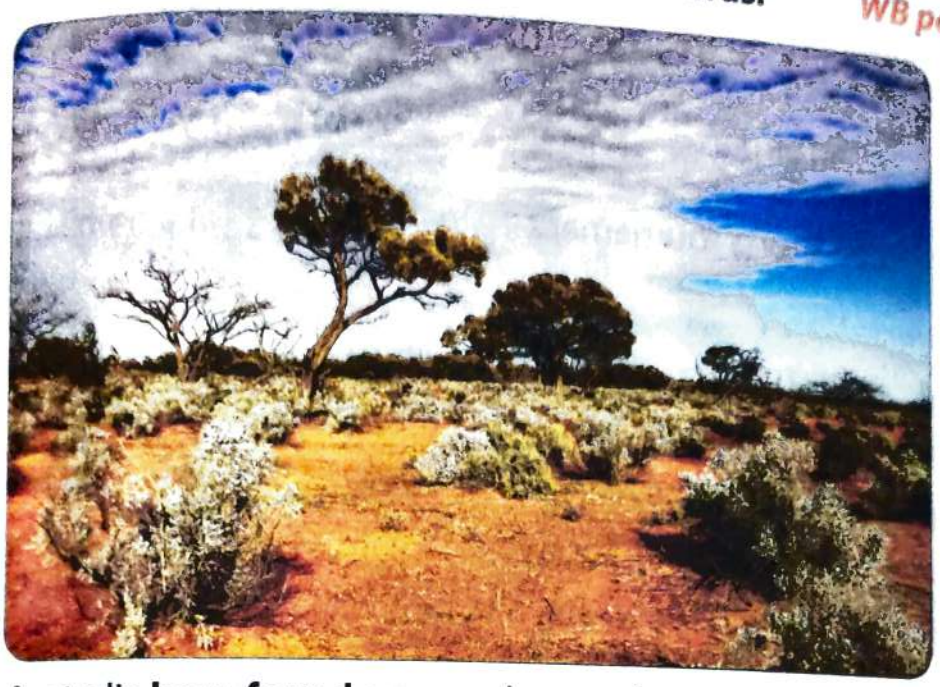
Post-listening question: - What's Tamer's problem?

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What kind of stories are you interested in?

3. Read the newspaper article. Choose the correct words. WB page 116



Police in Australia **have found** a man who was lost in the desert[1] for 18 days. Robert Webber, who is 58, **drove** from his hotel in the morning of January 2nd. He **was** not able to move his car after he went down a small farm road[2]. He tried to walk back to his hotel, but he **couldn't** remember the way. For many days, Robert **had to** drink water from rivers and eat what food he could find. Nearly[3] three weeks later, a man found Robert sitting under a tree. He was tired but well.

'Robert has **already** drunk lots of water and feels better now, but he hasn't slept much **yet**,' said a police officer. 'Remember that you **must** tell people when you drive somewhere in the desert,' he said. 'You **shouldn't** drive along small roads either. They are not always safe.'

(1) صحراء
(2) طريق زراعي
(3) تقريبًا

Post-reading question:

Complete the following sentences:

1. Robert was lost in the ..... for 18 days.
2. Robert is ..... years old.
3. He drank water from the ..... .
4. Long small roads are not ..... .

Lesson 2

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - Have you ever travelled by plane?

4. *Listen and match the conversations 1–3 with the places a–d (there is one place you don't need).* WB Page 117

a) ☐ at an airport

b) ☐ by a road

c) ☐ at a sports tournament

d) ☐ at a train station

Conversation 1



Wael : Hi Ziad. Has the bus arrived yet?

Ziad : No, it hasn't, Wael.

Wael : How long have you been here?

Ziad : I've been here for twenty minutes(1).

Wael : The bus is very late. Shall we walk?

Ziad : Good idea.

Conversation 2

Nawal : Hi Marwa. How are you?

Marwa : Hi, Nawal. I'm tired! I've not slept for hours.

Nawal : Have you arrived at the hotel yet?

Marwa : No! We've already flown for eight hours, but now we have to take a train.

Nawal : So you're at the train station(3)?

Marwa : No, we haven't left the airport yet.

(2) دقائق

(1) محطه قطار

(2) إنجاز

Conversation 3

Mother : Hi, Hisham. Have you done well?

Hisham : Hi, Mum. Yes, I think I was second.

Mother : Well done! What an amazing achievement(4)! Have you got a medal?

Hisham : No, they haven't told us who has won yet. I might be first!

Mother : I'm really happy for you. You did really well.

Post-listening question: - Why is Hisham's mother happy for him?

Practice B

Based on Units 4, 5 & 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Abdullah asks Mohammed about his hobby.

Abdullah : Have you got a hobby to do?

Mohammed : (1)..... . I have got many hobbies.

Abdullah : (2).....?

Mohammed : I prefer playing handball.

Abdullah : It's strange you don't say football.

Mohammed : Why? (3).....?

Abdullah : I like playing football.

Mohammed : (4).....?

Abdullah : I've played football (5)..... I was four.

Mohammed : I also played football when I was eleven.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You ask your friend for how long he/she has lived here.

.....

2 You ask your friend when he/she finished university.

.....

3 You tell your friend what makes you sad.

.....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Alfred Nobel was born 21st October 1833 in Sweden for a poor family. He was a chemist and a great inventor. Alfred couldn't go to school for many years because his father couldn't have enough money. Later, he was able to study because his father got a good job. Alfred was a very intelligent person. He was able to speak different languages. He also likes to read scientific books and to write stories. After his death in Italy in 1896, he left a lot of money, so people could start the Nobel prize. These are awards for people's great achievements all over the world in different fields such as medicine, science and literature. The winner gets both a small trophy and money. To remember Alfred Nobel, the awards are given on December 10th which is the day he died.

Two Egyptian people won the Nobel prize. Naguib Mahfouz in 1988 for writing. He wrote 34 novels and more than 300 short stories. Ahmed Zewail in 1999 for chemistry. He invented the femto second.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 Why did Alfred Nobel go to school later?

.....

2 When are Nobel's awards given?

.....

3 Do you think that Nobel prizes are important? Why? Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 Alfred Nobel died in ..... when he was 63.

a) Egypt b) Sweden c) England d) Italy

5 Naguib Mahfouz was the ..... Egyptian to get Nobel prize.

a) second b) last c) first d) only

6 Alfred Nobel was a/an ..... .

a) chemist b) inventor c) writer d) a and b

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My parents ..... married in 2003.

a) got b) get c) was d) did

2 The concert will collect money for ..... charities.

a) local b) general c) noisy d) naughty

3 Our class is going to do a ..... project.

a) since b) scientist c) science d) scientific

4 Egypt usually has ..... from different countries.

a) visitors b) visited c) visits d) visiting

5 People go to ..... to watch football matches and other sports.

a) stadiums b) museums c) parks d) studio

6 You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a/an ..... thing.

a) positive b) negative c) embarrassed d) anxious

SB

1 ..... is not something we want to see or hear about at our school.
a) Swimming b) Bullying
c) Thinking d) Practising

8 We ..... each other since we were ten years old.
a) know b) knew
c) have known d) are knowing

9 Engineers have ..... designed the bridge, but we haven't finished it yet.
a) already b) yet c) ever d) never

10 Yesterday, I ..... finish my geography project.
a) must b) mustn't c) had to d) given.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We've waited for the bus ..... (since) two hours.
2 ..... (ever/you/see) a shark?
3 We ..... (have to) do the dishes today. We can leave them for tomorrow.

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I worked there when we moved to Cairo. (since)

.....

2 It's against the law to park your car here. (mustn't)

.....

3 I couldn't climb a mountain when I was young. (able to)

.....

7 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The Adventures of Tom Sawyer." WB

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

End of Term Practice

(WB) Pages 118- 120

مصر الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 What is the speaker going to do today?
- a) take people to a nature reserve
- b) give directions to an information centre
- c) explain some facts about animals
- d) find some water for the visitors and birds

2 How do they get to the information centre?
- a) turn left and go past an old building
- b) turn left and go right at an old building
- c) turn right and go past an old building
- d) turn right onto a big road

3 What haven't they seen at the nature reserve this year?
- a) any birds
- b) smaller birds
- c) larger birds
- d) any water

4 What must people take with them?
- a) food
- b) enough water
- c) phones
- d) sun hats

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad and Adam are talking about their plans for the weekend.

Ziad : Hi, Adam. This is my older cousin, Hany.

Adam : (1)....., Hany. What are you doing next weekend?

Ziad : We're going to the park. (2).....?

Adam : I'm not sure about that. There are some boys in the park and ...

Ziad : (3)..... It might be good to talk about it, you know.

Adam : (4)..... .

Hany : Unkind comments! That must have made you feel very sad.

Adam : (5)..... But I told the officers at the park, and they talked to the boys about that.

Ziad : (6).....?

Adam : The boys said sorry to me the next day. But I still don't want to go to the park.

Hany : You mustn't feel bad anymore. I'm sure they won't do it again.

5 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool, but have you ever thought about what people did in the past? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years. In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice, which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called yellow fever. By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchens.

We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than other rooms! Now people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

6 A) Answer the following questions:

1 What two problems do fridges cause? .....

2 Why do you think that places that sold meat started to have fridges by 1900?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

3 John Gorrie invented a machine that .....

a) made people ill b) made ice

c) kept food cool

4 Modern fridges are going to .....

a) make more noise b) use less energy

c) look better

5 What do you think the word efficient means?

a) expensive b) cheap

c) work well and quickly

7 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We saw some beautiful trees in the ..... gardens.

a) botanical b) passenger c) smart d) elderly

2 Fatima worked hard to clean the dirty water, and the ..... were amazing.

a) competitions b) results

c) teams d) organisers

3 The parents knew that the children were ..... because they heard them talking.

a) awesome b) delicious c) awake d) sleeping

4 My grandmother is very ..... . She always knows how I feel.
a) upset b) positive
c) understanding d) embarrassed

5 Only Ali's cousin knew the way to the park, so we all ..... him there.
a) took b) went c) got d) followed

6 We ..... take the bus to the museum, we could take a tram or a train, too.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) might not

7 You don't have to buy any bread today because I ..... some.
a) bought already b) have already bought
c) have yet bought d) yet bought

8 I like ..... the blue shirt and the green shirt. Which should I buy?
a) either b) both c) neither d) nor

9 I was very ..... to see my cousin this morning because I thought she was in Jordan!
a) surprise b) surprising c) surprised d) surprises

10 The first bus to the museum ..... at 9.30 am every day.
a) is leaving b) leave c) leaves d) leaving

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1 The work that the volunteers do can really do a difference to our community. (make)

2 People were surprised by the kind of Mr Nader. He helps everybody he knows. (.....)

3 My parents have lived in the same house when 2012. (.....)

4 The computer isn't working because it is not plugged on! (.....)

6 Choose one of the following. Write about 100 words.

1 Write an article on some traditional Egyptian handicrafts you like.

2 Write an email to a friend suggesting how you could help your community.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Video Scripts

Video Script

Unit (1)

Aswan is a beautiful city in the south of Egypt. The River Nile runs through the city and there are lots of things to see and do.

Many people visit the Aswan Botanical Garden when they are in the city because it is very peaceful (1) here. The garden is on El Nabatat Island (2), opposite the famous Elephantine Island (3) in the River Nile.

It's open every day from 8 o'clock in the morning to five or six o'clock in the afternoon. To visit, you can go by ferry (4) or even by felucca (5).

Another place to visit in Aswan is the Nubian Museum (6). It is between Al Fanadek Street and El Sadat Road. Some visitors to Aswan take a taxi to visit the museum.

You can visit the museum every day. It opens in the morning at 9 o'clock and it closes at one o'clock for lunch. It opens again at five o'clock until nine or ten o'clock in the evening.

People come here to learn all about the life, culture (7) and history (8) of the people in Nubia (9).

After they visit the museum, some people take a boat to visit a real Nubian village near Aswan.

What can people see and do in your town or city? Are there any botanical gardens or other interesting places to visit?

0:00

(1) هادئ
(2) جزيرة النباتات
(3) جزيرة فيلة
(4) معدية
(5) فلوكة
(6) المتحف النوبى
(7) ثقافة
(8) تاريخ
(9) النوبة

Video Script

Unit (2)

Ceramics (1) is the word we use to describe pots, vases, bowls and tiles that are made from clay (2).

Clay is a type of mud (3) which you can use to make ceramics. This man is using clay to make a vase.

We can then paint the ceramics to make them both more colourful (4) and more beautiful.

(1) الخزفيات
(2) الصلصال
(3) طين
(4) زاهى الألوان

The Ancient Egyptians made some of the earliest ceramics in the world. They used clay from both the River Nile in the south of Egypt and from the city of Qena.

(5) زهرية

The ancient Egyptians used both kinds of clay to make some ceramics that you can still see today. This vase[5] is almost four thousand years old. It was made from Qena clay. Qena clay makes pots that are whiter than those made from Nile clay. This vase is even older. It is almost five thousand years old and it was made from clay from the Nile. Neither vase is painted. People probably used both of these vases to carry water.

This plate is from the nineteenth century. This plate is even older. It is from the eleventh century. Both plates are from Egypt and they are both painted beautifully.

Egyptian ceramics are very beautiful. Do you have any at home?

0:00

Unit (3)

Video Script

Narrator: There are many amazing projects that help communities in Egypt. Some of these projects help people, such as this one which helps people to get fresh water[1], and some help the environment[2], like these volunteers taking rubbish from rivers.

(1) ماء عذب

(2) البيئة

Bassita is a company that organises[3] community projects. For example, the VeryNile project helps to clean the River Nile. They take lots of rubbish, such as plastic, from the river. They then recycle[4] the plastic.

(3) تنظم

(4) يعيد تصنيع

Some of the plastic they collect is going to become shopping bags. Another project provides[5] clean water for many people.

(5) يمد/يزود

The Makhad Trust helps people in the Sinai Peninsula[6]. They teach people to keep bees. These bees are going to make honey, which we use for food. The Makhad Trust also creates[7] gardens so people can grow their own food.

(6) شبه جزيرة سيناء

(7) تنشئ

Are there any community projects where you live? What do they do to help your community?

0:00

Unit (4) Video Script

Tourists[1] have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the wonders[2] of the ancient world, such as the pyramids, temples[3] and other monuments[4]. It is a wonderful experience[5] for them.

Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world[6], such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are lots of activities to do by the Red Sea. Some people love relaxing[7] on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting, like snorkelling[8].

Snorkelling has been popular for many years and people have come to Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular destination[9] since the 1960s. This is because the water here is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful coral reefs[10] and there are some amazing sea animals, such as this dugong[11] and these lionfish[12].

Have you ever been to Dahab? Have you ever been snorkelling?

0:00

(1) السائحون
(2) عجائب
(3) معابد
(4) آثار
(5) تجربة
(6) العالم الطبيعى (الطبيعة)
(7) الاسترخاء
(8) الغطس
(9) مقصد/وجهة
(10) الشعاب المرجانية
(11) الأطوم
(12) ديك البحر

Unit (5) Video Script

Have you ever looked at the sky at night? You have probably seen the moon, planets[1] and stars in space[2].

People have already visited space many times. A Russian astronaut[3], Yuri Gagarin, went in 1961. And in 1969, an American astronaut called Neil Armstrong was the first man on the moon.

Today, there are astronauts on a satellite[4] called the International Space Station[5]. This flies around our planet every 90 minutes. The astronauts on the space station do scientific experiments[6] to study space. They usually stay on the Space Station[7] for about six months. And they even do exercises for two hours every day to keep fit.

(1) كواكب
(2) الفضاء
(3) رائد فضاء
(4) قمر صناعى
(5) محطة الفضاء الدولية
(6) تجارب علمية
(7) محطة الفضاء

Space has interested Egyptians for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians were the first civilization [8] to study the stars and the planets, and they made some important discoveries [9].

They first discovered the equinox [10]. This happens in March and September every year and it is when the position [11] of the sun in the sky means that the day and the night are the same length.

We are still making important discoveries today. At the Egyptian Space Agency [12] in Cairo, engineers from the agency and students from Cairo University have already built satellites. They now want to send an Egyptian astronaut to explore space. Nobody from Egypt has visited space yet, but they will in the future.

(8) حضارة
(9) اكتشافات
(10) الاعتدال
(11) موقع
(12) وكالة الفضاء المصرية

0:00

Unit (6) Video Script

Social media is very popular in Egypt. Almost 50 million people in the country often use it. They spend three hours a day on average [1] to connect with their friends, watch videos and share photographs. People often communicate [2] with each other in both Arabic and English on social media.

But do you know how people communicated with each other in the past? They weren't able to send messages or videos on their smartphones [3] and they couldn't look at each other's photographs on social media.

Important events in ancient Egypt were recorded [4] using a form of writing called hieroglyphics [5]. But there were also people called 'scribes' [6] who used an easier form of hieroglyphics called hieratic [7] to record what was happening every day. Scribes were important people and they recorded the laws [8], the food that farmers grew, and the amount [9] of money people gave to the pharaohs every year.

Because many people weren't able to write, they had to ask scribes to write letters and messages to send to their friends and family. In fact, we know a lot about Ancient Egypt today because of the work of these scribes. Maybe in the future, people will know about Egypt today because of all the social media messages.

(1) معدل
(2) يتواصل
(3) هواتف ذكية
(4) سجلت
(5) اللغة الهيروغليفية
(6) النساخ/الكتبة
(7) الهيراطيقية
(8) القوانين
(9) كمية

0:00

Listening Texts

Check Your English

3. Listen and check your answers to exercises 1 and 2:

Narrator : 1
Speaker 1: What mustn't you do in an exam?
Speaker 2: (c) talk loudly
Narrator : 2
Speaker 1: What should you do if you feel ill at school?
Speaker 2: (g) You should tell the teacher.
Narrator : 3
Speaker 1: What do you call someone who knows how to paint very well?
Speaker 2: (h) an artist.
Narrator : 4
Speaker 1: Which city is located on the Suez Canal?
Speaker 2: (d) Port Said .
Narrator : 5
Speaker 1: Who used to think that an animal's eye helped blind people?
Speaker 2: (b) the Ancient Egyptians.
Narrator : 6
Speaker 1: What fast food has a lot of fat in it?
Speaker 2: (f) pizza .
Narrator : 7
Speaker 1: What do you call the material which people often use to make clothes?
Speaker 2: (a) cotton.
Narrator : 8
Speaker 1: In which building do people usually sit and read quietly?
Speaker 2: (e) a library.

5. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b. c or d:

1. In the foreground. I can see some shops. There is a man selling clothes on the right.
2. A : Good morning. How can I help you?
   B : Hello. Can you tell me what time the museum opens?
   A : Of course. It opens at 9 am.
   B : Can I buy tickets there?
   A : Certainly or you can buy them online.
3. Beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Add some salt. Pour the eggs into a frying pan and cook them in a little butter. When it is ready. serve it with salad.
4. A : Hi, Leila. I was wondering if you would like to watch a film at my house this evening?
   B : Thanks Sara. What time should I come?
   A : About seven.
   B : Shall I bring anything?
   A : Could you bring some orange juice?
   B : Of course. See you later.
5. A : Can I help you?
   B : Yes. I like this red dress. Could I try it on?
   A : Of course. The changing room is there.
   B : Does it fit?
   A : No. Do you have a smaller size?
   B : W e don't have smaller red dresses, but we have a smaller one in blue.
   A : Thanks. I'll take it.

End of Term Practice

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (مؤلف)

Listen up, everybody. We've finished our tour at the reserve and as you realized there aren't any birds at the reserve and we haven't seen any of them this year. Therefore, we ask people to bring enough water with them and leave it in different places at the reserve. Now, we are going to the information centre to know a lot of information about the animals who live in the reserve. Please go straight on, then turn right and walk past the old building.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢١ / ٢٠١٢٢
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ٤٢/٢/١١/١٠٣
MAHDET MISR